

# **EQUIP BIBLE** **SCHOOL**

**(Incorporated: “A Bible School in a Nutshell”)**

**Ephesians 4:11-16**

---

**STUDIES THAT WILL HELP  
YOU BE MORE EFFECTIVE  
IN YOUR SPIRITUAL LIFE**

---

**Pastor Dan Nell  
Jeffrey’s Bay.  
6330  
South Africa**

**Email: [Danie.nell1937@gmail.com](mailto:Danie.nell1937@gmail.com)  
Website: [www.equipministry.co.za](http://www.equipministry.co.za)**

**Edited by: Neville Cummings**

**Copyright © 2001**

**(New Edition – June 2023)**

# Contents

<b><u>Introduction</u></b>	<b>How to study the Bible</b>	<b>4</b>
<b><u>Course ONE</u></b>	<b><u>Discover Yourself as:</u></b>	
	<b>Spirit, Soul and Body</b>	<b>12</b>
	<b>Complete Forgiveness</b>	<b>15</b>
	<b>Your Potential</b>	<b>19</b>
	<b>Your Position in Christ</b>	<b>24</b>
	<b>Your Ministry</b>	<b>29</b>
	<b>Your Gifts</b>	<b>33</b>
<b><u>Course TWO</u></b>	<b>Discipleship</b>	<b>41</b>
	<b>The Baptism of the Believer</b>	<b>44</b>
	<b>The Baptism in the Holy Spirit</b>	<b>47</b>
	<b>Faith in God</b>	<b>51</b>
	<b>The Power of our Words</b>	<b>55</b>
	<b>Divine Healing</b>	<b>58</b>
	<b>The New Birth</b>	<b>60</b>
	<b>Sanctification</b>	<b>64</b>
	<b>Temptation</b>	<b>69</b>
	<b>Sowing and Reaping</b>	<b>73</b>
<b><u>Course THREE</u></b>	<b>Praise and Worship</b>	<b>77</b>
	<b>Prayer and Intercession</b>	<b>90</b>
	<b>Spiritual Warfare</b>	<b>95</b>
	<b>The Holy Spirit</b>	<b>105</b>
	The Godhead of the Holy Spirit	
	The Fruit of the Spirit	
	The Work of the Spirit	
	The Anointing of the Spirit	
	The Sin against the Spirit	
	<b>The Kingdom of God</b>	<b>123</b>
	The Keys of the Kingdom	
	Kingdom Laws	
<b><u>Course FOUR</u></b>	<b>Laying on of hands</b>	<b>131</b>
	<b>Gods Timing</b>	<b>133</b>
	<b>Angels</b>	<b>137</b>
	<b>The Father Heart of God</b>	<b>139</b>
	<b>The Character and Nature of God</b>	<b>146</b>
	<b>The 4 Pillars of Marriage</b>	<b>153</b>
	<b>The Ark of the Covenant</b>	<b>156</b>
	<b>The Blood Covenant</b>	<b>159</b>

<b><u>Course FIVE</u></b>	<b>How can a Church Grow?</b>	<b>163</b>
	What hinders growth?	
	How did the first Church grow?	
	<b>Spiritual Leadership</b>	<b>171</b>
	Leaders needed in the Church	
	What a Leader is	
	A study of Moses as Leader	
	<b>Soul Winning</b>	<b>190</b>
	The Great Commission	
	Those who have excuses	
	The Altar Worker	
	The Follow-up Worker	
<b><u>Preaching</u></b>	<b>Guidelines for Preaching</b>	<b>203</b>
<b><u>Recommended Textbooks</u></b>		<b>209</b>

Get yourself these textbooks because it will give you more information and revelation on the subjects in this book

# HOW TO STUDY THE BIBLE

## 1. Why is it important?

- It brings growth! 1 Peter 2 v. 2 “As new-born babes, desire the pure milk of the Word, that you may grow thereby”  
Acts 19 v. 20 “So the word of the Lord grew mightily and prevailed.”
- It is food for our spiritual being! Matthew 4v 4 “It is written, man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God.”
- It is a light for our feet! Psalms 119 v 105 “Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.”
- It's a spiritual weapon! Eph. 6:17 “Take the Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God.”

## 2. Methods of Bible study

- a. JUST READ IT. The best method is to read the word of God on a daily basis. Read it until this book speaks to your inner being.
- b. SUBJECTS: Such as salvation; sanctification; the Holy Spirit etc  
What do you need to do this kind of study?
  - A Bible with good references
  - A Commentary.
  - More than one translation of the Bible.  
We recommend the following translations: King James; NIV; New King James; Amplified; The Living Bible.  
And you can add to this list.
  - Build your notes on Scriptures that are clear and understandable. Any Scripture you do not understand you must leave till later.
- c. TYPES: there are wonderful types in the Bible. Like Gen. 24 Abraham (type of God) Eliezer (type of the Holy Spirit) Isaac (type of Jesus) Rebecca (type of the bride of Christ)
  - Eliezer's work was to find the right bride for Isaac. That is the work of the Holy Spirit today
  - Rebecca met Eliezer at the spring! Isn't that the place where you and I made contact with the Holy Spirit?
  - Rebecca was asked to follow Eliezer to an unknown land to meet someone she never saw before! That is what God's Spirit is doing with us! That is why we also said “yes” (v. 58)
  - See how Isaac and Rebecca meet each other. Christ is waiting to meet his Bride the church!

- d. ANALYTICAL METHOD: you take the chapter and read it through asking questions all the time like the following:

**For Example take Luke 5:17-26**

- Where did this take place?
- Who is mentioned in this chapter?
- What is the main truth in this chapter?
- What is the key verse?
- What is this scripture trying to teach me?  
(Where Jesus is there will be power to heal and I must bring people to Christ as the four friends did.)  
First let the word speak to you before you give it to other people.  
We must be doers of the word! (James 1 v. 22 to 25)

- e. A WHOLE BOOK: **We can look at James.** Ask questions such as:

- Who wrote the book? (James 1 v. 1 Galatians 1 v. 9)  
A brother of Jesus.
- To whom did he write? (James 1:1 and James 2 v. 1)
- What is the main teaching of this book? In this case James is teaching us what practical faith is. (2:14)
- What key words is the writer using? FAITH and WORKS!  
James 2 v. 20-22

- f. CHARACTER STUDIES:

We can really learn from the characters in the Bible. Their victories; their failures; their depression; their temptations.

How does one do a character study in the Bible?

- Decide on a character.
- Make a list of all the Scriptures concerning this person. Read them through and make notes when God starts speaking to you.
- Use a Bible with references. Through the years I have found the Thompson's chain reference to be very helpful.
- What is the meaning of the name of the character I am studying? Why did he/she receive this name?
- Out of what family did this person come from?
- What did this person accomplish and what negative things happened in his/her life?
- What does God want to teach me through this character?

**3. What will help you when you do Bible study?**

- DIFFERENT TRANSLATIONS. (Don't be afraid to use other translations)
- NOTE BOOK. Always keep one close by. When you want to remember something, write it down.
- RECOMMENDATION FOR NEW CHRISTIANS:

New Christians must first read the New Testament. Start with the four gospels. Acts tells how the Holy Spirit worked with the early church.

- KEEP AN OPEN MIND. Sometimes we can't hear God because our own theology is in the way.
- HOW DO WE USE COMMENTARIES? Use them after the Lord has spoken to your heart through what you were reading in the word. Not before that. Also read a few translations of that section.
- SCRIPTURE WILL NEVER CONTRADICT SCRIPTURE  
If you find a text that confuses you, find out what the whole Bible says about that issue. The rest of the Scriptures will explain your text!
- PLEASE TAKE THE BIBLE AS IT IS WRITTEN! We want to “spiritualise” the Bible. Yes, there are symbolic parts in the Bible as we find in revelation, Daniel, and Ezekiel. Otherwise take it as God has given it to us.
- DO CROSS REFERENCING: that is to allow the Bible to explain itself to you. Scripture will never contradict Scripture.

**Parables:** the Greek word is parabolos and it means to put something that we can understand next to something with the deeper meaning that is difficult to understand.

**Allegory:** (Figurative) It is a story that brings wonderful truths to our lives when God gives us revelation knowledge. Such as in Genesis 24

**Types:** They usually have a prophetic element. Something in the Old Testament will underline a truth in the New Testament. Take Exodus 12 where we read of the Passover lamb. We know it was a type of Christ who was slain to get us out of bondage (our Egypt)

**Symbols:** Something has a meaning other than that which is obvious. We find a lot of them in the book of Revelations. (beasts with horns etc.)

#### 4. The Word of God helps us in our righteousness.

2 Timothy 3 v. 16, 17 (NKJ) "All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in **righteousness**. (v.17) that the man of God may be complete, thoroughly equipped for every good work."

THIS SCRIPTURE TEACHES US:

a. The Word of God:

- **teaches**
- **rebukes**
- **corrects**
- **and trains us**
- **to become Righteous before God** (meaning to stand in the right relationship with God)
- **you will become “complete”**
- **and “thoroughly equipped” for every good work.**

## Our Bible

The Bible contains the will of God, the state of man, the way of salvation, the judgment of sinners, and the blessedness of believers. Its doctrine is holy, its commands binding, its history true and its utterances unchangeable. Read it to get understanding and live it to be holy. It contains light to lead you, food to strengthen you and comfort to encourage you. It is the traveller's map, the pilgrim's staff, the pilot's compass, the soldier's sword and Christ's manifesto. Here paradise is restored, heaven is opened and the ports of hell revealed. Christ is its greatest subject, our welfare is its intention, and God's honour is its purpose.

It must fill the memory, rule the heart, and guide the feet. Read it slowly, often, and prayerfully. It is a mine of riches, a paradise of holiness, and a river of pleasure. It is given to you in this life, will be opened at the judgment, and remembered in eternity. It places a great responsibility on us, rewards serious labour, and brings condemnation on those who trifle with its sacred content.

### Summary of the Old Testament books:

1. **The first five books of the Bible are known as the Pentateuch. They are:**

GENESIS:               -- The beginning or origin.  
EXODUS:               -- The departure or exit.  
LEVITICUS:            -- The Levitical system -- those performing rites  
                                  in the temple.  
NUMBERS:             -- The numbering of Israel  
DEUTERONOMY:        -- The second presentation of the law.

2. **The historical books:        (from Joshua to Job)**

The 13 books that follow the Pentateuch are all historical. They give the history of the Israelites after their settlement in their land. The historical books close with the beginning of the restoration and reconstruction of the holy land. Although they are almost totally historical there are still many spiritual lessons contained in them. The books cover the time period of approximately 1000 years after the death of Moses. Three books namely Joshua, Judges, and Ruth describe the earlier history of the Jewish nation, while the six books 1 and 2 Samuel 1 and 2 Kings and 1 and 2 Chronicles describe the time period while the people were ruled by kings. The last three describe the time period of exile namely Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther.

When viewed separately the books contain the following information:

**JOSHUA**: Israel's liberation out of Egypt, Moses being succeeded by Joshua, the takeover of Canaan and a division of the land amongst the 12 tribes of Israel. Joshua, after whom the book was named is the main character and most likely the writer of it.

**JUDGES**: Describes the history of the early years of the young nation. It is characterised by periodical falling away from God and subsequent attacks by enemies as punishment. During this period the people were judged by judges appointed by God in times of crisis. This book mentions the name of 13 judges one of which was a woman.

**RUTH**: This is known as the most beautiful story in the world. This book sheds more light on family life in the days of the judges. We get insight into the Jewish customs in the days of the judges. We must strive to imitate the great spiritual examples contained in it.

**BOOKS OF SAMUEL**: Samuel the 13th and last judge describes glorious times in Israel's existence. In addition, he tells of the appointment of the kings of which Saul was the first. Young David is prominent in the story. And he later becomes the king over the Jewish people. Jerusalem is conquered and serves as the spiritual and administrative capital.

**BOOKS OF KINGS**: These deal with the last days of David's kingship and his being succeeded by Solomon. Under the latter's kingship the greatest enlargement of Israel took place. In addition, we learn of the two kingdoms (Israel and Judah) Israel became divided after the death of Solomon. We learn of the enmity between them. The actions of the different kings of the two kingdoms are described up until they are defeated and carried away into exile. We also learn of the powerful ministry of the greatest prophet in the Old Testament, Elijah and his successor, Elisha.

**THE BOOKS OF CHRONICLES**: Most scholars believe that Ezra wrote these books.

They are a repetition of the history written in 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings. In them we focus on David and his successors in the kingdom of Judah. Little is said of the northern kingdom of Israel. The books begin with the crowning of David, his succession by Solomon and end with the defeat of Judah and its existence as a satellite state of enemy forces.

**EZRA**: This is a story of the group of Jews that returned to Jerusalem to rebuild the temple. Cyrus, the Persian king, plays a large role in the rebuilding of the temple in Jerusalem. (Study Ezra 1 and Isa. 45)

**NEHEMIAH**: Nehemiah provides strong leadership in the rebuilding of Jerusalem's walls while subject to severe persecution. Fortunately, he completed his task. (It took 52 days to rebuild the walls! Neh.6:15)

**ESTHER**: The story of Esther unfolds in the courts of Persia while Ezra and Nehemiah were in Jerusalem. Similar to the book Ruth, it is an exciting



story from the life of the Jews. God's faithful protection and care for His people are clearly revealed in this book.

**JOB:** This book is the story of a certain man who believed in God despite many disappointments. He was one who could cry out in difficult circumstances "I KNOW MY REDEEMER LIVES"

**3. 4 books of poetry: Psalms to Song of Solomon**

**4. 17 prophetic books - Isaiah to Malachi**

**There are 39 Old Testament books**

### **NEW TESTAMENT BOOKS: (27 books)**

1. The four Gospels: Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John
2. The Acts of the Apostles
3. The Epistles: Romans to Jude
4. The Revelation of John. (See 1 v. 1)

### **THANK GOD FOR THE BIBLE IN OUR OWN LANGUAGE!**

There are tens of thousands of books on the earth, but most of them last only a short time; they are just as short lived as mankind! Some books don't survive even beyond being printed. BUT THERE IS A BOOK THAT WILL NEVER DIE, AND IT IS OUR BIBLE!! Think about the persecution that the Bible had to go through, but the devil could not get rid of it. With the Psalmist we call out: "Your promises have been thoroughly tested, and your servant loves them." (Psalm 119 v.140)

## I BELIEVE THE BIBLE IS GOD'S WORD FOR THE FOLLOWING REASONS:

1. 2 Timothy 3 v. 16 "ALL Scripture is God-breathed.."  
2 Peter 1 v. 21 "For prophecy never had its origin in the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit."  
1 Peter 1 v. 25 "the Word of the Lord stands for ever and this is the Word that was preached to you."

### 2. The second proof that the Bible is God's Word is its wonderful unity:

The Bible contains: 66 books (39 in the Old Testament and 27 in the New Testament)  
1180 chapters  
773 692 words  
3 566 940 letters

It was written by 35 people (they were shepherds, fishermen and even kings) it was written in different countries, over a time period of approximately 1600 years.

### **BUT STILL FORMS A WONDERFUL UNITY!**

This would not have been possible if it was not inspired by God.

IN ADDITION TO THIS: One Testament confirms the other. Think for example of the suffering and death of Jesus. What was predicted in the Old Testament happened in the New Testament exactly as was predicted. If you read Isaiah 53 you would think that was written after Jesus' crucifixion. However it was written more than 700 years before Jesus died on the Cross.

### 3. Another reason why I believe that the Bible is the Word of God is because Science has proved it:

Questions like: Was there a flood?  
Did Sodom and Gomorrah exist?  
Did Nineveh exist, and could Jonah be swallowed by a fish?

ALL these questions and others too have been proved by science through excavations and discoveries that have been made. Even the discovery of Habakkuk and the 66 chapters of Isaiah, near the Dead Sea in a cave silenced many critics.

### 4. A further proof is people's experience:

The Bible has changed many lives and many have received healing through it.

## **GOD'S WORD IS:**

1. **A SWORD:**  
Hebrews 4 v. 12 “For the word of God is living and active, sharper than any double-edged sword”  
Ephesians 6 v. 17 “Take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.”
2. **FOOD:**  
1 Peter 2 v. 2 “Like newborn babies, crave pure spiritual milk, so that by it you may grow up in your salvation”  
Matthew 4 v. 4 “Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God.”
3. **SEED:**  
1 Peter 1 v. 23 “For you have been born again, not of perishable seed, but of imperishable, through the living and enduring word of God.” (See also Mark 4 v. 3 and 14)
4. **SAVING POWER:**  
Romans 1 v. 16 “I am not ashamed of the gospel, because it is the power of God for the salvation of everyone who believes”  
This word "power" comes from the Greek word “dunamis” from where we get the word dynamite.  
Yes, God's word has explosive power!
5. **GOD'S WORD IS LIKE A HAMMER:**  
Jeremiah 23 v. 29 “Is not my word like fire, declares the LORD, and like a hammer that breaks a rock in pieces?”

### **WHAT DOES THE WORD OF GOD MEAN TO ME?**

1. **IT PROTECTS ME AGAINST SIN**  
Psalm 119 v. 11 “I have hidden your word in my heart that I might not sin against you”
2. **IT HELPS ME NOT TO WALK IN DARKNESS**  
Psalm 119 v. 105 “Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path.”
3. **IT CLEANSSES OUR LIVES**  
Psalm 119 v. 9 “How can a young man keep his way pure?  
By living according to your word.”  
John 17 v. 7 “Sanctify them by the truth; your word is truth”  
John 15 v. 3 “You are already clean because of the word...”
4. **IT GIVES JOY**  
Jeremiah 15 v. 16 “When your words came, I ate them; they were my joy and my heart's delight, for I bear your name, O LORD God Almighty.”

**MAY GOD GIVE US A DEEP-ROOTED LOVE FOR HIS WORD!**

# **Discover YOURSELF**

## **God made us to enjoy life.**

### **King David once wrote these words in Ps 139 verses 1 to 14**

*“O, Lord, You have searched me and known me.*

*You know my sitting down and my rising up. (Verses 1,2)*

*You have hedged me behind and before,*

*And laid Your hand upon me. (Verse 5)*

*For You formed my inward parts.*

*You covered me in my mother’s womb. (Verse 13)*

*I will praise You, for I am fearfully and wonderfully made...”(Verse 14)*

- Your birth may have surprised somebody, but not God.
- He knew you before you were born and had (and still has) a plan for your life.
- The question is: “Are you a happy person, or not?”
- Did some bad things happen to you?
- You must know that only God can change a “minus” into a “plus”
- Do you understand what I am saying? In other words: It is only God that can take a negative thing and change it to something wonderful in your life.
- Thank God that all things work together for good to them that love God. We read of this in **Rom.8:28** *“And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to His purpose.”*

## **But first you must “discover yourself” as a person and also discover the possibilities you have inside of you.**

Remember you are wonderfully made and God has a purpose for you in life. Stand up in your spirit-man and start making the difference in other people’s lives.

## **Discover yourself as Spirit, Soul and Body.**

This is something you must understand. It will help you to get new direction in life. You are a spirit being, that has a soul and lives in a body.

## **The spirit of man.**

***A clear scripture in the Bible to show that man is spirit, soul and body is found in 1 Thessalonians 5:23 “And may the God of peace Himself sanctify you through and through and may your spirit and soul and body be preserved sound and complete and found blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.”***

According to this Scripture, you and I should live a sanctified life before the Lord. That means a life that is “set apart” for the Lord.

Our lives must be to the Glory of God. That is the reason why God created you and I.

REMEMBER THAT YOU WERE REBORN IN YOUR SPIRIT AND NOT IN YOUR SOUL OR BODY!

**When God created man He made him out of a material part and a spiritual part.**

The body is the “material part” and the spirit and soul is the “spiritual part”  
**This truth is found in Gen.2:7** “And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.”

When one dies the “spiritual part” (spirit and soul) leaves the “material part” (that is the body) And if the spiritual and material parts (spirit, soul and body) can be united again, this person will live again on earth.

To understand the above statement, you must read **1 Kings 17:17-24** were Elijah the prophet prayed for a young son who died.

He prayed these words “O Lord my God, I pray, let this child’s soul come back to him. Then the Lord heard the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child (not the soul of someone else) came back to him, and he revived.”

Remember: The soul that came back into his body wasn’t his blood but was his spiritual part that united with his material part.

The Bible speaks of “the outer and inner man” (**2 Cor. 4:16**) The “external and hidden person” (**1 Pet. 3:3,4**) Our “innermost being” (**John 7:38**) and of the “inner good treasure” (**Matt.12:33-35 and Matt.15:18-20**)

This “inner man” or “inner person” of you is the one God wants to have communion with. This is the one part of you that is hungry for God. Once you have discovered this inner man inside of you and know how to worship God with your inner man, you will experience the fullness of joy.

**Jesus said in John 4:24** “God is Spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.” Yes, you can worship God with your body, but God wants you to worship Him with your inner man, your spirit-man.

## **The Soul of Man**

It is not easy to separate the SPIRIT and SOUL from each other.

Still the Bible tells us that there is a difference between the two and thus they can be divided. **In Heb. 4:12 we read these words** “For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of *soul* and *spirit*, and of joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.”

A good definition for our soul will be our *intellect, emotions* and our *will*.

**Prov. 23:7** “For as he (man) thinks in his heart, so is he”

**You and I are what we think.** Yes, the “battlefield” is our minds. It is in our minds were the enemy attacks us first.

**We all have a “Philosophy” “Philo” means love and “sophy” means thoughts**

Philosophy is “**love for our thoughts**”

Your thoughts made you what you are today!

Change the way you think and it will change your whole life!

**That's why we must think things of above, things that please God.**

**Col.3:2;** "Set your minds on things above, not on things on the earth."

**Rom.12:2;** "And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God." **Also read Phil. 4:8**

It has been said that most illnesses are psychosomatic. In other words what we think has an effect on our physical well being.

Fill your mind with the good things of life and your body will enjoy good health.

In your soul you will experience emotions such as love and hate; enthusiasm; disappointment, joy and depression. **We have to work on these emotions!**

**What does the word "enthusiasm" mean?**

It comes from the Greek word: "entheos"

And the word "entheos" is used for God.

I believe the more enthusiasm a person has, the more of God he has in himself.

If you have lost your enthusiasm in life, the Lord can restore it. Allow Him to touch you and enthuse you in your soul.

**God gave you the ability to create.**

You can even call the things which do not exist as though they were.

**(Rom.4:17)**

You have this potential inside of you because God made you like this.

God did not make us to be like a traffic light. We are not electronically controlled. God made us with our own **will** so that we can make our own decisions.

***Thank God, He gives us choices to make ourselves!***

**WHAT INFLUENCES MY SOUL?**

**In other words: What influences my INTELLECT, EMOTIONS and WILL?**

(1) What I **SEE** (**Matt. 6: 22, 23**)

(2) What I **HEAR** (**Ps. 92:11**) An Evangelist said to me: "Dan, I only listen to successors." That word meant a lot for me through all these years.

(3) What I **SPEAK** (**Prov. 18:21**)

**The Body of man**

Our **BODIES** are important to God. **The Bible says in Rom. 12:1**" I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present **your bodies** a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is your reasonable service."

**Also read 1 Cor. 6:19,20**

**We are the MASTERPIECE of God's creation!**

We are so unique, and did you know, within us God built in healing?

***Thank God for what is written in Ps.139:14? "I will praise You, for I am fearfully and wonderfully made."***

# **Discover: COMPLETE** **FORGIVENESS**

***Read 1 John 1: 1-10 until the truth of this wonderful chapter brings light into your heart***

**John writes this letter not to the world, but to the church.**

Look at how often he speaks of "WE" e.g. v. 6 "If WE say that WE have fellowship with Him..." v. 7 "But if WE walk in the light, as He is in the light, WE have fellowship with ONE ANOTHER"

The word "WE" or "US" occurs 25 times in these 10 verses! Thus we can be sure that here the Bible is talking to Christians.

The only way to receive forgiveness of sins, is by confessing your sins! Therefore, we need to rediscover the power of confession. We should be able to apologise to God and to man whenever we do wrong!

It was when **Daniel** confessed his sin and those of his people that God answered him. (**Daniel 9: 4-16; 19: 22**)

**If you want an answer to your prayers, then you must be able and willing to confess all sin in your life.**

When **Isaiah** confessed, the live coal from God's altar touched his mouth and his guilt was taken away. (**Isaiah 6: 5-7**) And remember, he was already a prophet!

**Many people want God's fire from God's altar, without making their lives right with God by confessing their sins. If you want to overcome you must confess.**

**IF YOU WANT COMPLETE FORGIVENESS THERE ARE THREE THINGS YOU SHOULD DO:**

**FIRSTLY: You must get forgiveness from the Lord for YOUR SINS.**

Someone asks: How can I receive forgiveness for my sins? The answer is by asking Jesus to forgive you and to cleanse you with His blood.

**1 John 1: 7, 9** "But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, ***and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses from all sin.***"

"If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."

If blood does not reach a certain part of our body, that part will die.

If Jesus' blood does not flow through your life, you will die spiritually. And the only way to get His blood to cleanse your soul and mind is to confess your sins with all of your heart.

## **SECONDLY: Forgive YOURSELF**

As the devil accused **Joshua the high priest** before God (**Zech.3: 1 to 5**) so the devil accuses us before God. **Revelation 12: 10:** "Then I heard a loud voice saying in heaven. Now salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of His Christ have come, for the accuser of our brethren, who accused them before our God day and night, has been cast down."

Never help the devil in his dirty work by accusing others as well as yourself!

**REMEMBER: All sins that are honestly confessed are forgiven and forgotten by God.**

**Colossians 2:13, 14 (The Living Bible)** "He forgave all your sins, and blotted out the charges proved against you, the list of His commandments which you had not obeyed. He took this list of sins and destroyed it by nailing it to Christ's cross."

**Psalm 103: 12** "So far as the east is from the west, so far has He removed our sins from us."

**Where is East and where is West?** No one can determine a specific place. In other words, He separates our sins from us so that we can never meet up with them again.

**Isaiah 44: 22** "I have swept away your offences like a cloud, your sins like the morning mist. Return to Me, for I have redeemed you."

Mist is something that prevents you from being able to see where you're going. When God has forgiven us, he takes this "mist" out of our way so that we can see God's way and walk in it.

**Micah 7:19** "You will again have compassion on us; You will tread our sins underfoot and hurl all our iniquities into the depths of the sea. "

It literally means that God feels sorry for us, tramples on our sins, and throws them into the deep sea.

**Jeremiah 31:34**

"For I will forgive their wickedness and will remember their sins no more."

If God doesn't remember them, you and I mustn't remember them either.

If God Himself can forget, He can also help you to forget.

But how can you forget if you keep that letter to use against someone; or the negative notes in that book, or even that conversation on tape? Destroy all those things so that you truly can forget.

**You ask: "What must I do if the old wrong thoughts come back?"**



### **Colossians 3: 1, 2**

“Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God. Set your minds on things above, not on earthly things” Fill your mind with the good things in life.

### **QUESTION: WHAT HAPPENS IF I SIN AGAIN?**

**1 John 2: 1; “My little children, these things I write you, so that you may not sin. And if anyone sins, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.”**

As Christians we should not sin. But if you sin you can once again go to Jesus for forgiveness. His grace is more than enough. Believe this.

### **THIRDLY: FORGIVE ALSO YOUR FELLOW MAN.**

**To really be forgiven you need:**

- (1) Forgiveness from God
- (2) You need to forgive yourself
- (3) But it is also important to forgive others

In the Lord’s Prayer Jesus taught us to pray as follows:

**Luke 11: 4** “Forgive us our sins, for we also forgive everyone who sins against us.” (We also read this in Matthew 6: 12)

**Did you know that many people cannot move “mountains” of problems because they cannot forgive?**

**Mark 11: 23, 24 is a wonderful scripture.** But just to “BELIEVE” and to “TALK TO” your mountain is not enough. **We must also read the 25<sup>th</sup> and 26<sup>th</sup> verses:**

“And when you stand praying, *(in front of your problem that’s your mountain)* forgive, if you have ought against any: that your Father also which is in heaven may forgive you your trespasses. But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses “

**The Living Bible translates Mark.11:25 as follow:**

“but when you are praying, first forgive anyone you are holding a grudge against, so that your Father in heaven will forgive you your sins too.”

**What happens if I forgive?**

I unlock the spiritual door of the person I forgive and I release myself.

**And if I don’t forgive?**

Then I am given over to the “torturers” according to Matthew 18: 15 to 35  
If I do not want to forgive the Bible says I will be thrown into a spiritual prison, and I will stay there until I paid what it takes to get free before the Lord.

**(Matt.5:23-26)**

**REMEMBER:** The MAIN REASON why I forgive others is not because they deserve it, but because I want to be free. **Luke 6: 37**

## **PEOPLE THAT WERE HEALED BECAUSE THEY FORGAVE**

### **A lady that was chronically sick for 40 years:**

While on leave in Uvongo on the South Coast of South Africa my wife and I met a Christian woman who was previously in our church. As believers together we each decided to draw "Manna cards." (That is a little box with cards that have bible scripture written on them) This woman was amazed when she selected Colossians 3: 13 for the second time in one week. It read: "Bear with each other and forgive whatever grievances you may have against one another. Forgive as the Lord forgave you." While others drank coffee, I sat next to her and asked her if she realised that the Lord wanted to speak to her from Colossians 3: 13. She confirmed it. My following question was: "but you are chronically sick aren't you?" The answer was that for 40 years she had been sick with various ailments. I asked her immediately "but is it not possible that there are people that you need to forgive" the answer was: "Yes, for 40 years!"

I felt a strong urge to encourage her to make right with these people as soon as possible. I found out that she did so during the following week! Six months later I attended her funeral. The most beautiful testimony was from her children and friends: "She was a difficult, sick person for the past 40 years, but for the last six months she was an angel on two legs and healthy as well!" She could have been like that for 40 years.

### **A woman who had bitterness for 12 years got growths in her throat.**

In May 1981 she went to a service in Johannesburg. Before the preacher prayed for sick people, he sent them to the prayer room to get right with God and to forgive others. Then he prayed for them. That evening she went home with her husband having been fully healed in her body and set free in her spirit.

### **I was teaching in a Bible School in Kiev on Forgiveness.**

Anna, a Russian lady, told me how her father wanted her to come and live with him and his new wife and kids in Moscow. She had three children of her own and was living with her mom in Kiev. When she turned this down her father had a stroke and died eleven days later in a hospital. For more than seven years she could not forgive herself because of what happened to her father. But when she heard this message on "Complete Forgiveness" she was set altogether free!

### **How many times must I forgive?**

**Matthew 18: 21, 22 it's 70 x 7 (Luke 17: 3, 4 says up to 7 times a day.)**

### **GET COMPLETE FORGIVENESS**

- Ask God to forgive you.**
- Forgive yourself (Speak to yourself in the mirror and release yourself)**
- Forgive your spouse.**
- Forgive your parents.**
- Forgive your teachers and lecturers.**
- Forgive that person that defrauded you.**

**Discover COMPLETE FORGIVENESS and live a life of overflowing joy.**

# **Discover YOUR POTENTIAL**

**Genesis 1:26,27** “Then God said. ‘Let Us make man in our image, according to Our likeness; let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the air, and over the cattle, over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth. So God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them.’” (Also read v. 28)

## **This is one of the most important portions of the Bible.**

According to this statement from God’s Word we have the potential to RULE and be a WINNER. Also to live a FRUITFUL LIFE and REPRODUCE!

### **What do we mean when we talk of potential?**

Dormant ability (that is ability that is inactive) It is also reserved power. Yes in you there is power you have never dreamed of being inside of you. We also have untapped strength and hidden talent. You are wonderfully made of God.

**Potential is everything that you can be but haven’t become!**

**Potential is everything that you can do but haven’t done yet!**

**Potential is how far you can reach but haven’t touched yet!**

**Potential is what you can reach but haven’t achieved yet!**

**Potential is ability that is not exposed yet!**

IMPOSSIBLE THINGS CAN BE MADE POSSIBLE.

Mark 9 v. 23 “all things are possible to him who believes”

## **Potential is latent (sleeping) power!**

WE HAVE POWER TO BIND AND LOOSE. According to the words of Jesus in **Matthew 18 v.18** “Assuredly, I say to you, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you lose on earth will be loosed in heaven.” This has to do with **forbidding or permitting**.

If someone has a demon, we as believers can command the demon to leave that person, as Paul did in **Acts.16:18**. Thank God we have the authority in Jesus’ Name to **forbid** the enemy and to even cast demons out as it is written in:

**Mark 16:17** “In My Name they (those that believe) will cast out demons”

**You don’t need to be an Evangelist to cast out demons.**

**You must only have faith in the Name of Jesus Christ!**

**Potential is not to rest on what you have reached in life!**

One of the most serious hindrances to our potential is the word “success “.

**Never be self-satisfied with the last goal that you have reached.**

## **GOD MUST HAVE SEEN SOMETHING IN US WHEN HE CALLED US.**

### **Read 1 Corinthians 1 v. 26-29**

There are more than 6 billion people on the earth. Nevertheless, each is unique with their own set of fingerprints. You are therefore original and very precious.

- God looked at Gideon and saw something that was definitely different from what he saw in himself. (Read judges 6 v. 12 to 16)
- God looked at Adam and saw mankind.
- God looked at Jacob (the traitor) and saw our Messiah.
- God looked at a young shepherd boy, David, and saw an anointed king.

### **There are three groups of people these days:**

- The few that make things happen.
- The few that watch things happen.
- The majority of people who have no idea what are happening.

### **Have you decided to make a difference in your environment?**

**Success is not measured in the light of what others have achieved but rather by whether I've given my best.**

### **In our graveyards the following lie buried:**

- **Dreams** that never became a reality.
- **Songs** that were never written or sung.
- **Books** that were never printed.
- **Paintings** that never saw the light.
- **Discoveries** that would make life easier.
- **Plans** that never got further than the drawing board.

### **Yes, great potential buried under the earth!!**

When I was a chaplain in the prisons, I cried when I saw people with potential who were deprived of their freedom.

### **Ask yourself the following:**

Who am I?

Why am I here?

What is the potential that is in me?

What am I able to do?

With what measure must I measure myself?

Who sets the standards?

What can I do to increase my abilities?

What are my limitations?

### **Think of a sculptor**

When a sculptor is busy with a piece of art, he does not see what he envisaged before he started.

He walked past a plantation – old stumps lying around – He asked the owner what he's going to do with them. "Nothing" was the answer. He asked for one and took it home. He took it with a smile and began to work on it with his chisels. When the sun came up the next morning we saw the sculptor fast asleep next to his handiwork. Next to him there was a beautiful bird, which had been set free from the old stump! He placed it in his front garden. And who do you think wanted to buy it? None other than the owner of the plantation!

### **Think of what happened to Abraham Lincoln.**

He lost his job in 1832; He was voted in the executive council in 1834; He lost his wife in 1836; He had a nervous breakdown in 1838; He was defeated as chief whip of the executive council in 1838; He was defeated in his nomination for Congress in 1843; Abraham Lincoln was chosen for Congress in 1846. He was defeated as member of the Senate in 1854; He was defeated in his nomination as vice president of the USA in 1856; He was again defeated for the Senate in 1858; BUT HE WAS FINALLY CHOSEN AS PRESIDENT OF THE USA IN 1860!

### **Matthew 25: 14 to 30 (The story of the talents)**

*This tells us that God has given each of us talents or abilities. Some more, some less, but everyone has received. Some doubled their talents.*

*Others didn't work with them but rather buried them. No wonder that they lost even the little that they had.*

**USE THE TALENTS GOD HAS GIVEN YOU.**

**Someone said it like this: "Failure is not the absence of success. Failure is the neglect of trying."**

### **The source of all potential**

***Do not look at creation to find out who you are! Because the purpose of something is only in the mind of the one that made it. Find out therefore why God made you.***

The key in understanding life is in the source of life – not in life itself. You will never discover your purpose on the earth if you use another person to measure yourself.

***If I look at you I see what you have reached, and I realise that your potential is far more than what you are now!***

### **You are what God says you are!**

Please read the following scriptures in your Bible **2 Corinthians 5 v. 17 to 21**

**Rom. 8 v. 1; Judges 6:12; John 10:10;**

**John 7 v. 38** (Jesus said) “He who believes in Me, as the Scripture said, out of his heart will flow rivers of living water.”

*He that is in us is great and powerful like a river of living waters!*

*Think of Peter – He was “Simon” which meant: “weak; ungovernable; and like a leaf” But God changed him to be “a rock”.*

**Accept yourself, because if you feel good about yourself you will feel good about other people.**

### **We must have goals**

*Many plan their meals for the following week, but have no plans for their lives.*

*Stop and make an adjustment to the direction for your life. Begin immediately and plan for the following six months, 12 months, and even two years. What do you want to be? Make a note of it and monitor it to see how you progress. Let your goals for life inspire others too.*

*You know Philippians 4 v. 13. “I can do all things through Christ who **strengthens** me.” The word **strengthens** in Greek means: “Christ who continues to infuse inner strength into me”. (Amplified Bible)*

*Dr Myles Munroe says: “the people who change the world are people who take the word impossible out of their dictionaries. Whenever God gives you a responsibility, he also gives you the ability to meet that responsibility.”*

### **Stay connected to your origin**

POTENTIAL IS CONNECTED TO ORIGIN. (Gen.1:26-28)

**Plants lose their life if they are taken out of the ground. Fish lose their life if they are taken out of water. PEOPLE LOSE TRUE LIFE IF THEY ARE NOT CONNECTED TO GOD.**

**Your relationship with God is not optional, but essential for life.**

We are people because we have received God’s Spirit. (Genesis 2 v. 7)

**A person is a spirit, has a soul (this consists of, amongst other things his thoughts) and lives in a body.** Therefore 2 Corinthians 4 v. 16 is so amazing. This is also one of the reasons why handicapped people can succeed in life.

**“Therefore we do not lose heart (give up hope) Even though our outward man (our bodies) is perishing, yet the inward man is being renewed day by day” (2 Cor. 4:16)**

### **You must work out your own potential**

**Philippians 2 : 12 – 13** “work out your own salvation with fear and trembling; for it is God who works in you both to will and to do for His good pleasure.”  
(YES, GOD WANT’S TO ENJOY YOU)

### **Work gives birth to your potential**

***Stop dreaming and do what is in your heart.***

***Eccl. 9 v. 10*** “everything that your hand finds to do, do it with all your might.”

*If you want to see your potential born (and grow) there is one thing you must do and that is to “work out that which God has worked in you. “*

*The first thing that God said to Adam after He made him was: “Work “ (Genesis 2 v. 15)*

*Work is not a curse or a sin. Genesis 3 v. 19 must not be incorrectly understood.*

Fantasies are dreams without work. It is a vision without a mission. Solomon said: “he that works his own land will prosper, but he that chases fantasies will grow poor “

Success has got nothing to do with your environment, but with that which is within you.

**Think correctly**

**Everyone has a philosophy.** “philo” means “to love”. “sophy” means “thoughts”. In other words, to love your own thoughts.

Greek philosophers still rule the world because what they thought has been written in books. Someone said: Books are “frozen thoughts”

**We are the sum total of what we have thought of until now.**

***Proverbs 23 v. 7*** “For as he (man) thinks in his heart, so is he”

**Therefore we must constantly fill our hearts with everything that is good.**

**Colossians 3 v. 2** “Set your mind on things above, not on things on the earth.”

In **Philippians 4 v. 8** the Apostle Paul wrote that we must think on things that are just, pure, lovely and praiseworthy.

**Solomon says in Proverbs 4 v. 23:** “Above all else, guard your heart, (affections) for it is the wellspring of life.”

**The Good News Bible:** “Be careful how you think, because your life is shaped by your thoughts”

# **Discover YOUR POSITION IN** **CHRIST**

**2 Cor.5:17-21** is one part in the Bible that tells us what our position is in Christ.

In verse 17 Paul writes these words: “Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.”

Strong’s (2537) explains this word “**new**” and says the Greek word used is “kairos” **Meaning:** “unused, fresh, novel” It also means that its new in regard to form or quality, rather than new in reference to time. **Praise the Lord, we are new creatures!**

Christians are always told what they should be like.  
Many Christians don’t know their position in Christ.

**In The Living Bible 2 Cor.5:17 reads as follows:** “When someone becomes a Christian, he becomes a brand new person inside. He is not the same anymore. A new life has begun.” In Greek “new creation” means “a new human race that did not exist before”

That is why you are unique. There was no one like you before and there will never be one like you again.

Did you know that the words “IN CHRIST” and “IN HIM” we find 134 times in the Bible?

## ***WE MUST WORK “OUT” WHAT GOD WORKED “IN” OUR LIVES***

**Phil.2:12,13** “Work out your own salvation (work on the salvation God has started in your life) with fear and trembling. For it is God who works **in** you both to will and to do for His good pleasure.”

## **ONE OF THE BEST STUDIES IN THE BIBLE TO DISCOVER YOUR POSITION IN CHRIST IS THE FIRST CHAPTER OF EPHESIANS.**

**Ephesians is a wonderful book. We can divide it into three parts:**

- Chapter 1: My POSITION in Christ
- Chapters 2 to 6:9: My WALK in Christ
- Chapter 6:10-24: My WEAPONS in Christ



**Eph. 1:3** *“Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in heavenly places in Christ.”*

- Salvation is a blessing
- Healing is a blessing
- The Holy Spirit is a blessing
- Financial prosperity is a blessing

**THANK GOD FOR THE BLESSING OF ABRAHAM IN DEUT. 28:1-14**

You will see that material blessings are included. Through Christ the blessing of Abraham became mine! Gal.3:13,14

Jesus said in Matt.6:33 “But seek first the Kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all **these things** shall be added to you.”

**WHAT THINGS?** Matt.6:31,32 talks about what we **eat, drink, and wear.**

**Eph. 1:4** *“He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world.”*

*In 1 Pet.2:9 Peter wrote: “But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, His own special people, that you may proclaim the praises of Him who called you out of darkness into His marvellous light.”*

**AMPLIFIED BIBLE SAYS:** *“He actually picked us out for Himself as His own.”*

**Eph. 1:7** *“In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of His grace.”*

THANK GOD, WE ARE FORGIVEN THROUGH THE SHED BLOOD OF JESUS!

*1 John. 1:7,9 “But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin. If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.”*

**Eph. 1:11** *“In Him also we have obtained an inheritance”*

**THANK GOD WE ARE HEIRS IN CHRIST.**

What does it mean to inherit? It is when we receive from a will, things we never worked for. We become an heir when the person that made a will dies, and our name is found written in it as a beneficiary. (one who is left a legacy under someone’s will)

JESUS LEFT US HIS TESTAMENT AND IT CAME IN FORCE THE MOMENT HE DIED. (Heb.9:17)

JESUS AROSE AND BECAME ALSO THE EXECUTOR OF HIS OWN TESTAMENT.

**Eph. 1:13,14** *“In Him you also trusted, after you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation; in whom also, having believed, you were sealed with the Holy Spirit of promise, who is the guarantee of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, to the praise of His glory.”*

WE ARE SEALED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT. THIS GIVES US PROTECTION AND AUTHORITY.

**AMPLIFIED BIBLE (Eph. 1:14)** *“The Spirit is the guarantee of our inheritance – The first fruit, the pledge and foretaste. The down payment on our heritage.”*

STAND IN THE POSITION GOD HAS PUT YOU.

*“For greater is He that is in you than He that is in the world.”* **1 John 4:4**

### **STUDY EPHESIANS 1:20-23**

- *Jesus is the Head of the Body (His Church)*
- *We are His body*
- *Everything that has “a name” is under our feet!*

# Discover YOUR MINISTRY

All over the world God is restoring MINISTRIES in His church.  
God wants to use every member.

## EVERY SAVED CHRISTIAN IS CALLED TO A MINISTRY

### (1) MINISTRY BRINGS FULFILLMENT IN OUR LIVES

Paul wrote to Timothy in 2 Tim. 4:5

*“Do the work of an Evangelist, fulfil your ministry”*

CHURCH IS FULL OF UNFULFILLED CHRISTIANS  
IN OUR EVERYDAY LIFE WE FIND INFULFILLED PEOPLE  
**A Bank manager that wanted to be a farmer !**  
**A Teacher that wanted to be a motor mechanic !**

### (2) THE MAIN REASON FOR MINISTRIES

IS NOT TO GIVE YOU A “TITLE” BUT TO SERVE OTHERS.

**1 Pet.4:10** *“As each one has received a gift, minister it to one another.”*  
**THERE ARE TOO MANY “MAKE ME” CHRISTIANS! (like a swing)**

### (3) YOU DO NOT HAVE SUCCESS IN YOUR MINISTRY BECAUSE:

- (a) You lost your anointing (Ex.40:15 *“You shall anoint them, that they may minister to me as Priests. For their anointing shall surely be an everlasting Priesthood.”*)  
(Even Jesus needed it: Luke 4:18 *“The Spirit of the Lord is upon me because He has anointed Me to preach the Gospel.”*)
- (b) It may be that God wants you to move on to a NEW MINISTRY
- (c) We have become too “Specialised” in Ministry  
The needy we send to the Welfare Committee  
The Sick we refer to those with “The Healing Ministry”  
The seeking soul and broken one we refer to the trained Counsellor.

**In 1 Corinthians 12: 4-6** Paul talks of “**gifts**” “**ministries**” and “**activities**”

- If I should ask you what “**gift**” God has given you, you may answer me “**the gift of healing**”
- And if I should ask you what “**ministry**” you fulfil in the church, you may answer me “**I love to pray for the sick**”

**1 Corinthians 12:18** *“But now God has set the members, each one of them, in the body (the church) just as He pleased.”*

- God decided on my function the day I was added to His church.
- I have to discover my place in the body of Christ and once I've found it, this will give me fulfilment.

### **What does the Bible say about “the body of Christ”?**

The “Body of Christ is not a church denomination or a church building, but it’s all those washed in the blood of the Lamb! **1 Cor. 12:27 Eph. 1:22,23**

### **How do we become part of the body of Christ?**

**1 Corinthians 12: 13** "for by one Spirit are we baptised into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and all have been made to drink into one Spirit."

When you are reborn, you become part of the body of Christ and associate yourself with Christ and believers. It is obvious that one cannot “join” the true church of God.

### **The members in the body need one another.**

**1 Corinthians 12: 12 and 26.** Which part of your own body can you say that you don't need? (You need even your little toes) You lose your balance without them!

This was the strength of the first church. We read about it in **Acts 4: 32.**

**No member is unimportant.** If one in the congregation suffers, then everyone must suffer, because Galatians 6:2 says; "bear one another's burdens and so fulfil the law of Christ". But listen to this: And if one is glad, we all must be glad!

**We must see who is:** Lonely, grieved, burdened with sin, ill, in temporary need. And then do something about it.

### **Christ wants to introduce a healthy body, His church to the Father.**

**Ephesians 5: 27** "that He might present her to Himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing, but that she should be holy and without blemish".

### **Communication in the church is very important**

*The body of Christ sometimes experiences pain due to the lack of communication. Do you know that a wound in the body only seals because the red and white blood cells fight together against any virus that attacks the body.*

### **THANK GOD FOR THE “FIVE-FOLD” MINISTRY GOD GAVE**

**Eph. 4:11** “And He Himself gave (always remember that it is God that gives) some to be apostles, some prophets, some teachers, some evangelists and some pastors and teachers.”

### **Use your five fingers to understand the “Five-fold” Ministry.**

**APOSTLE** Is as your thumb that can touch all fingers and hold them together

**PROPHET** Your pointing finger that can point to the past and future

**EVANGELIST** As your longest finger that reaches out to the lost (Acts 1:8)

**PASTOR** As the ring finger (He is married to the flock – he cares for)

**TEACHER** As your little finger (Brings balance by sound teaching)

Whatever Ministry God gave you must help others to find theirs and you must equip them to be more effective for God.

**ACCORDING TO EPH. 4:12 GOD GAVE MINISTRIES TO “EQUIP” HIS PEOPLE FOR THEIR WORK IN THE CHURCH.**

**The Living Bible says:** "why is it that He gives us the special abilities to do certain things best? It is so that God's people will be equipped to do better work for Him, building up the church, the body of Christ, to a position of strength and maturity."

- **WHAT SHOULD MY MINISTRY DO FOR ME?**  
**Verses 13-15 answers this question**
- **WHAT SHOULD MINISTRIES DO FOR THE CHURCH?**  
**Verse 16 says that ministries will give “growth” “unity” and “love”**

**Let's read it:** "...the whole body (the church) is joined together by what every joint (member) supplies, according to the effective working by which every part does its share (fulfilling their ministry) causes **growth** of the body (the church) for the **edifying** (unity) of itself in **love**."

**Other translations on this Scripture:**

**The Living Bible:** "under His direction the whole body is fitted together perfectly, and each part in its own special way, helps the other parts so that the whole body is healthy and growing and full of love".

**The Amplified Bible:** "for because of Him the whole body "(the church in all its various parts closely) joined and firmly knit together by the joints and ligaments with each part (with power adapted to its need) is working properly (in all its functions) grow to full maturity, building itself up in love".

## LET US DISCUSS THE DIFFERENT MINISTRIES

### 1. Apostles:

Dake's Bible translation says that an apostle is: "A delegate, one sent out with the full power of attorney".

**2 Corinthians 12: 12:** "truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds."

Paul proved he could persist even though they would stone him in Lystra (**Acts 14**) Read of his persistence in **2 Cor. 11: 24 to 28**. Signs, wonders and powerful deeds are plentiful in Paul's life -- think of what happened in **Acts 19: 11 to 12**. That is why Paul qualified as an apostle.

### 2. Prophets:

You prophesy when you speak a word given by God. I believe that God wants us to speak life into the dry bones in the church Just as Ezekiel did in Ezek.37

The Greek word for "prophecy" means "prediction of the future" but also "a gift from God to bring forth the hidden truths" -- Baxter analytical Greek lexicon.

In **Acts 11: 28** we find an example of what the prophet is: "And then one of them, named Agabus, stood up and showed by the Spirit that there was going to be a famine throughout all the world which also happened in the days of Claudius Caesar".

**Also read Acts 21: 8-13**

- a We must do our best to prophesy. 1 Corinthians 14: 1, 31:39
- b The unbeliever will be convicted. 1 Corinthians 14: 24, 25
- c The congregation will be **edified, exhorted** (encouraged) and **comforted**. 1 Corinthians 14: 3
- d How does prophecy work in the congregation? 1 Cor. 14: 29

### 3. Evangelist:

Thank God for the full-time Evangelist. But anyone that declares the Gospel of Christ through witnessing and preaching is busy fulfilling the ministry of an Evangelist. ***You see, it is a ministry and not a title!***

The altar worker and follow-up worker are also doing this ministry. We should teach our members how to be effective in these ministries.

I pray that God will call you to win the lost to Him because the harvest field is more than ripe! **Revelation 14: 14, 15.**

#### 4. **Shepherds:**

The pastor's work to tend to the flock as a shepherd is very important, but this is not only the work of the pastor, but also that of the elders and cell leaders. I believe that an elder and cell leader should be able to teach God's word and to pray for the needs of the people.

Peter writes in **1 Peter 5: 1 to 3**: "the elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and witness of the sufferings of Christ and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed: Feed the flock of God, which is among you, taking the oversight thereof, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being examples to the flock."

Paul says to the elders in Ephesus (**Acts 20: 28**):

"Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over which the Holy Ghost has made you overseers to feed the church of God, which he has purchased with his own blood."

If God has called you as a shepherd to tend to His flock you should prepare yourself to be used of God! The need in God's flock is very big. God needs shepherds. We can't just plant seed; we should also take care of the "plants" (new souls) and give them water.

#### 5. **Teachers:**

The church desperately needs this ministry.

According to **Matthew 28: 19** we make disciples, and baptize them, but we should also teach them.

Cell leaders, Elders and Sunday school teachers, should be able to teach the Word.

We should teach our people to observe what Christ told us to do. If God has called you into this ministry, you should really **equip yourself** as a teacher of God's word.

Joyce Meyer once said to Reinhardt Bonkke: "*You catch them and I will clean them.*" It is wonderful to see new souls being saved, but we should teach them God's ways!

#### 6. **The Gifts of the Holy Spirit (as 'n Ministry)**

In **1 Cor.12: 28-30** Paul talks about power, the inspiration to preach, those who do miracles, the gift of healing and those who speak in languages they have never learnt. These are all gifts of the Holy Spirit and it is clear that they are given to serve the body of Christ.

**2 Timothy 1: 6,7** says we must "stir up" these gifts in our lives and be of service in the congregation. Do this so that you can be used by God.

**1 Cor. 14:26 to 39** tells us how some of these gifts can work in our church services.

## 7. Helpers/Helps:

***The following are classified under the ministry of helpers:***

- The music ministry (to help us worship God)
- Altar workers (to lead sinners to Christ in our services)
- The follow-up workers (visiting the new converts at home)
- Hospital work (praying for the sick).

## 8. Governments (Administration)

Anyone in the church who has an administrative work to do is a gift of God to His church.

**Church office, such as:** Secretary; treasurer; sound and computer; tapes; videos; book room; to greet the people; to be an usher; cleaning the church; any maintenance work; transport of members etc.

The LIVING BIBLE sums it up and makes it very clear in **Romans 12: 6 to 8:**

“God has given each of us the ability to do certain things well. So if God has given you the ability to **prophecy**, then prophecy whenever you can -- as often as your faith is strong enough to receive a message from God. If your gift is that of **serving others**, serve them well. If you are a **teacher**, do a good job of teaching. If you are a **preacher**, see to it that your sermons are strong and helpful. **If God has given you money, be generous in helping others with it.** If God has given you **administrative ability** and put you in charge of the work of others, take the responsibility seriously. **Those who offer comfort** to the sorrowing should do so with Christian cheer.”

**Now you must answer the following question:**

**What is my function or ministry in the body of Christ?**

Every church should have a Ministry questionnaire, where every member can have the choice to decide where in the church they want to be involved.

After they completed this form they must be used as soon as possible.

**Some may need training first.**



# **Discover YOUR GIFTS**

**There are many gifts, but only 9 gifts of the Holy Spirit according to 1 Cor.12:1-11**

There is so much ignorance these days about God's gifts. That's why Paul wrote these words in **1 Cor. 12:1** "now concerning spiritual gifts, brethren,  
I would not have you ignorant"

**If there was ever a time that the Church needed God's Holy Spirit, it is today. We must desire for the Spirit to come on us just as He came as a dove on Jesus when He was baptised in the Jordan River.**

**It is striking to notice that the Holy Spirit is compared to a dove.** We read in Luke 3 v. 22: "and the Holy Spirit descended on Him (Jesus) in bodily form like a dove."

**Why is the Holy Spirit compared to a dove?**

1. **A dove is very sensitive.** Therefore, we can grieve the Holy Spirit -  
- Ephesians 4 v. 30. The Amplified Bible expresses it as follows  
"and do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, do not offend, or vex (tease) or sadden Him"  
Ephesians 4 v. 25 to 29 tells us what grieves the Spirit.
2. **A dove has a fixed direction.** Think of carrier pigeons and how they find their way back home. The Holy Spirit will always give you direction! Believe that for those in your family who have lost their spiritual direction.
3. **A dove has no gall bladder!** There is thus no bitterness in God! The Greek word for bitterness, namely "pikros" **means to cut or to stab.**  
If someone tends to cut and stab others with their mouth there is definitely bitterness in their hearts.
4. **A dove has perfect balance in its wings.** And did you know that the dove has equal numbers of flight feathers in each wing.  
The Holy Spirit therefore brings a perfect balance between gifts and fruits in the Church.

**Think also of the High Priest's clothing that he wore. We read of it in Exodus 28:31 to 35.**

At the bottom of the cloak there were bells and pomegranates alternating with one another. The bells that made a noise represent

the gifts and the pomegranates represent fruits. If you seek the **gifts**, you must surely also seek the **fruit**.

The noise that the bells made while the priest moved continuously was an indication that he was alive. Congregations where the gifts are not "audible" may be suffering from spiritual death.

Let us decide to choose life by stirring up the gifts that are in us.

**1 Timothy 4 v. 14 and 2 Timothy 1v. 6**

**You “stir up” your gift by doing the following:**

- Pray about your gift
- Increase your knowledge about your gift.
- Make yourself available for God to use you in your gift

**WRITE the gifts (1 COR. 12) opposite the fruits of the Spirit (Gal. 5:22) and then you will see that there is a perfect balance between GIFTS AND FRUIT**

**THE GIFTS**

The word of wisdom

A word of knowledge

Faith

Healing

Working of miracles

Prophecy

Discernment of spirits

Tongues.

Interpretation of tongues

**THE FRUIT**

Love (Speak in love)

Joy (Knowledge from God brings joy)

Peace (Faith in God will bring peace)

Patience (Always pray with patience)

Kindness (Work gentle with people)

Goodness (edify, exhort and comfort)

Faithfulness

Gentleness. (Don't shout it out)

Self-control (1 Cor. 14:32)

**WHY DID GOD GIVE GIFTS TO HIS CHURCH?**

***Each one should use whatever gifts he has received to serve others.***

**1 PET.4:10** “AS EVERY MAN HATH RECEIVED THE GIFT, EVEN SO MINISTER THE SAME ONE TO ANOTHER”

**The Living Bible: (1Pet. 4:10)**

“God has given each of you some special abilities; be sure to use them to help each other”

## LET'S TALK ABOUT THE GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT:

### 1. A Word of Wisdom

This is not natural wisdom because there are even unbelievers who do not have the Holy Spirit but are gifted with natural wisdom. The gift of a **Word of Wisdom** is something that can only be given by the Holy Spirit to a person. Whilst natural wisdom has facts to its disposal the gift of the word of wisdom relies on a direct revelation from God.

How often has the gift of a Word of Wisdom helped a child of God when he had no answer to a difficult question!

*Is there some way in which we can test godly wisdom?*

**Definitely, namely with James 3:17** "but the wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all pure; then peace loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere." Always test a word that anybody gives you "in the name of the Lord" with this scripture.

Examples where this gift has worked are found in **1 Kings 3:16-28** and **Acts 27:21-25**.

### 2. A Word of Knowledge

It is a gift of a **Word of Knowledge** and as in the first gift it only works when it is spoken.

In other words if it has been received but the one who received it does not make it known, this gift has not functioned as it should.

GOD KNOWS EVERYTHING! Therefore, He can reveal to His children what is hidden.

***NOTE: Often a word of knowledge and a word of wisdom work together.***

For example, by the Word of Knowledge John could know the situation and the condition of the seven churches of Asia and by the Word of Wisdom he could give them counsel. (See Revelation 2 and 3)

**The purpose for a Word of Knowledge:**

- It warns the child of God against his enemies. 2 Kings 6 v. 8 to 12
- It helps a child of God to know precisely what God wants from him. In Acts 9 v. 11 and 12 God reveals to his child Ananias something that he didn't know, namely the place where Paul was and even what he was doing.
- A word of knowledge helps in prevailing prayer.

Often a word of knowledge has saved God's children from certain defeat because others have prayed for them after God revealed things to them through this gift.

**I want to mention my personal experience of this on a Thursday morning years ago.**

I was busy praying and at about 11 o'clock a vision appeared where I saw two men (one was a friend of mine by the name of Chris) in a boat in the sea in great danger! For half an hour I prayed desperately for them until God's peace came over me. That afternoon Chris told me personally how they were in danger (at about 11 o'clock) and how their engine wouldn't work. Waves were already breaking over them when suddenly like an invisible hand someone pushed their boat into the river mouth and they reached the bank safely!  
What would have happened if I had been disobedient to this revelation from God? I thank God for this miracle.

**A word of knowledge reveals things in people's lives.**

- i) Through this gift Nathan the prophet helped David to confess his sins before God.

I saw the value of this gift when the Lord showed me the sins of a worship leader while he was leading the worship. When I spoke to him personally, he was initially annoyed but later in brokenness confessed his sin and was fully restored in his spiritual life. Thank God for the Word of Knowledge.

- ii) This gift is also in the church to keep it pure! Read of Ananias and Sapphira in Acts 5:1-10 Look what happened to them!

**A Word of Knowledge is also used by God to show His children what awaits them. (Acts 21:10-11)**

### **3. The Gift of Faith**

We all have faith. (Romans 12 v. 3) It is impossible to please God without faith. (Hebrews 11 v. 6)

But normal faith is different from a Gift of Faith!

Examples of the gift of faith are:

Elijah prayed that it would not rain for three and a half years!

Paul was bitten by an adder on the island of Malta. By the gift of faith he shook the snake off into the fire. (Acts 28:5; Mark 16:18)

Jesus cursed the fig tree and then turned around and walked away. The next day His disciples saw that it had withered. (Mark 11:12-24)

#### 4. Gifts of Healing:

##### 1 Corinthians 12 v. 9

As Paul encouraged Timothy, I also want to encourage you with 1 Timothy 4 v. 14 and 15: "do not neglect your gift, which was given you through a prophetic message when the body of elders laid their hands on you...Be diligent in these matters; give yourself wholly to them so that everyone may see your progress."

##### **Why do we put emphasis on the GIFTS of the Holy Spirit?**

We do it because God gave these gifts to the Church so that we can serve each other with them. Ministry should not only come from the pulpit.

REMEMBER: Jesus wants his Church to do works even greater than those He did! (John 14 v. 12)

##### **The purpose of this gift:**

- Firstly, to glorify God. (Acts 3 v. 1 to 9)
- To destroy the works of the devil. (Acts 10: 38; Luke 13:10 to 17)
- To confirm the Gospel. (Mark 16 v. 20; Acts 8 v. 5 to 7)
- To draw people to the Gospel

Through the ages God has used the gift of healing to convict people and to save them. May this gift be revived in the church so that Jesus can be exalted as the Great Physician.

##### **This is why He came to this world. (Isaiah 53:5)**

Signs and wonders will make the church overflow again! Gladly this gift is available to all children of God.

(John 14 v. 12; Mark 16 v. 18)

#### 5. Working of Miracles

- Natural laws are changed when this Gift works (2 Kings 6:1- 7)
- Demons are driven out by this Gift (Matt 17:20 Acts 16:16-18)
- By this Gift Jesus changed water into wine. He multiplied the fish and bread for the crowd. God wants to do even greater miracles through us
- By this Gift Ananias and Sapphira died because they lied to the Holy Spirit (Acts 5 v. 1 to 10)
- The dead are raised by the working of miracles  
Tabitha(Dorcas) Acts 9:30-42; Eutychus Acts 20:7-12

**Mel Tari writes in his book "Like a Mighty Wind"** of the revival in Indonesia that they walked around a dead person singing and praying. This man was dead for three days. After singing their eighth chorus, the man stood up alive and well! This took place by the working of miracles! Through this miracle 21,000 people came to repentance in this town.

- Read also in Acts 13 v. 6 to 12. By the gift of miracles Paul commanded that Elymas become blind because he opposed the work of God.

## 6. Prophecy

We find in 1 Corinthians 14 v. 29 to 32 how the gift of prophecy should work in the local church. Many people have asked: what is this gift?

***Some say that it is preaching. No, it is not normal preaching, although a preacher can sometimes prophesy while he is busy preaching! Others confuse this gift with the gift of a word of knowledge.***

An example in the Bible: Acts 11 v. 28: "and one of them (prophets. See v. 27) by the name of Agabus stood up and through the Spirit predicted that a severe famine would spread over the entire Roman world. (This happened during the reign of Claudius.)

You will therefore notice that the gift of prophecy is mainly there to reveal future things.

### **The Greek word for "prophecy" is:**

Prediction of future events (Baxter analytical Greek lexicon). He describes it also as a gift of God to reveal hidden truth!

### **Paul shows us the following:**

- a. That we must desire to prophesy. 1 Corinthians 14: 31, 39.
- b. Unbelievers will be convicted by this. 1 Cor. 14: 24 and 25
- c. Through prophecy the congregation is strengthened encouraged and comforted. 1 Corinthians 14 v. 3;  
A prophetic word is there to build and not to cut into pieces.

### **1 Corinthians 14 v. 29. Prophecy can be judged.**

Thus prophecy may never take the place of God's word. Because even prophecy will one day pass away, but God's Word will never pass away. (1 Cor. 13 v. 8; 1 Peter 1 v. 25.)

***We must always be sure that it is God that speaks, so that we Do not get to the point where Israel was in Ezekiel 13: 1 to 9.***

*Question: Do you want to see your congregation experience revival? Then you must speak as Ezekiel did over the dry bones! (Ezekiel 37)*

## 7. Discernment of spirits

Note: It is not discerning people but spirits. It is not reading people's minds. It is not about people, but about spirits. And we do not need a supernatural gift to see people's faults.

We realise that we deal with spirits in the air.

Ephesians 6 v. 12 "for our struggle is not against flesh and blood but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms."

- Fear can be a spirit! (2 Timothy 1 v. 7)
- Lies are a spirit! (1 Kings 22:19 - 23; 2 Thess. 2: 9 to 12)
- Uncleanliness is a spirit! (Luke 4 v. 33 to 35; Acts 5 v. 16. Mark 5 v. 2; Luke 9 v. 42).
- Sickness can also be a spirit! (Luke 13 v. 11 to 16)  
The most sickness is not a "spirit"
- Deafness and dumbness can also be a spirit.  
(Luke 11:14; Mark 9:25)
- Rebellion is a spirit. (1 Samuel 15 v. 23)

This gift discerns the spirits, and by the gift of miracles the evil spirits are cast out. We find an example in Acts 16 v. 16 to 18. Here both gifts worked.

## 8. Different kinds of tongues

There is a difference between speaking in tongues as a sign that I'm baptised with the Holy Spirit and the gift of different kinds of tongues.

***But why tongues... What value do strange tongues have?***

1 Corinthians 14 v. 2: "for anyone who speaks in a tongue does not speak to men but to God. Indeed no one understands him; he utters mysteries with his spirit" Therefore it is so wonderful to pray in a strange tongue. Even the devil does not understand what you pray.

1 Corinthians 14 v. 4: "he who speaks in a tongue edifies himself"

1 Corinthians 14 v. 14 "For if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays, but my mind is unfruitful" As your mind has the ability to express itself in understandable words the spirit has the ability to express himself in unknown tongues when I pray in a strange tongue.

When we say that our minds are unfruitful, we mean that we are aware of ourselves but that the tongue is not produced by the mind.

There is actually another reason why God's Spirit gives tongues and we find this in **1 Cor.14:22**. It is not necessarily the case that the person who speaks in tongues must interpret it.

Do not translate **1 Cor. 14:13** like that.

Because according to v. 28 of the same chapter there can also be another interpreter. If there is no interpreter, then he that speaks in tongues to the congregation must be quiet and speak to God (v. 28)

## 9. Interpretation of tongues

This is not the natural ability to understand unknown languages and to explain them, but in a supernatural way the Holy Spirit gives the interpretation of a strange tongue that is spoken. This interpretation can be revealed IN DIFFERENT WAYS TO SOMEONE IN THE CONGREGATION FOR EXAMPLE:

- a. **By a vision:** While someone is speaking in tongues the person himself or someone else can receive a revelation by means of a vision of the interpretation of the tongue.
- b. **By the revelation of the thoughts** expressed in the strange tongue, and then conveying them in understandable words.
- c. **Sometimes someone, moved by the Spirit, can have an urge to speak** to the congregation in understandable words while the other person is speaking in tongues. Therefore, he doesn't see a vision and thoughts are not revealed to him.

**NOTE:** The interpretation doesn't have to be exactly as long as the tongue. It is not a word-by-word translation! It is an interpretation!

### **Can interpretation be in the form of a prayer to God?**

We can answer by saying that it is possible, but if God wants to speak to the congregation, it will not be in the form of a prayer -- because prayer is always directed towards God

**AND NOW: These 9 gifts of the Holy Spirit have been given to the church of Jesus Christ to glorify His Name. Would it not be wonderful if these gifts were present in every congregation?**

LET US PRAY THEREFORE, SO THAT THE GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT WILL BE A MINISTRY TO HIS CHURCH.

### **DID YOU KNOW: GOD WANTS TO USE YOU!**

**1 Timothy 4 v. 14** *“Do not neglect the gift that is in you ...”*

I believe that God's gifts are stirred up by the laying on of hands may you experience this

This is what Paul wrote to Timothy, the young pastor.

**2 Timothy 1 v. 6 and 7** *“Therefore I remind you to stir up the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands. For God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and a sound mind.”*



# **DISCIPLESHIP**

The first and great command to the church of Jesus Christ is “ therefore go and make disciples of all nations....Matthew 28 : 19

## **WHAT DOES THE WORD DISCIPLE MEAN?**

GREEK: Mathétés.

It means being a follower of Christ.

## **IS THERE SOMETHING ONE MUST DO TO BECOME A DISCIPLE OF CHRIST?**

Yes, the following:

- You must firstly understand that you are a sinner.  
In Romans 3:23 we read: *“for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.”*
- Then you must obtain forgiveness by confessing your sins to God.  
1John 1:7,9 *“the blood of Jesus Christ...cleanses us from all sin. If we confess our sins, God is faithful and just to forgive us our sins.”*
- Now receive Jesus Christ into your life as your Saviour according to John 1:12 *“as many as received Him (Christ) to them He gave the right (the authority) to become children of God.”*  
Now tell others, your family and friends, what God has done for you (Rom. 10:9,10)

## **LOOK WHAT GOD DID WITH YOUR SINS WHEN HE HAS FORGIVEN THEM.**

Psalms 103:12 He removed our sins from us as far as the East is from the West. There is no place on earth what we can call East or West.

We can do that with North and South.

Isaiah 44:22 God blotted out our sins like a thick cloud

Micah 7:19 God said He will cast our sins into the depths of the sea.

Jer. 31:34 God said He will remember our sins no more.

**IF GOD HAS FORGIVEN AND FORGOTTEN MY SINS, I MUST DO THE SAME FOR MYSELF.**

If you have understood this *and* done it, you are a child of God!

You have eternal life!

**1 John 5 : 12, 13 :** “He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God so that you may know that you have eternal life.”

**What happens when we sin again? Was everything that the Lord did for us in vain? NO ! Look what is written in 1 John 2 : 1,2.**

*“My little children, these things I write you, so that you may not sin.*

*And if anyone sins, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ*

*the Righteous. And He Himself is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the whole world"*

**NATURALLY YOU CAN EXPECT TO EXPERIENCE PERSECUTION AND OPRESSION BUT DON'T BE AFRAID TO CONFESS CHRIST.**

Christ didn't promise sunshine and roses for His disciples. On the contrary, He said that there would even be division in households when you follow Him.

Jesus said in John 16:33 *"In the world you will have tribulation; but be of good cheer, I have overcome the world."*

2 Tim 3 :12 *"and all who desire to live godly in Christ Jesus will suffer persecution."*

Why do we talk about discipleship?

Because it is written in the Bible.

Matt. 28:19 " Therefore go and make **disciples** of all nations..."

Luke 11:1 One day Jesus was praying in a certain place. When He finished, one of His disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray, just as John taught his **disciples**."

Acts 14 : 21 "They preached the good news in that city and won a large number of **disciples**. Then they returned to Lystra, Iconium and Antioch."

In Antioch disciples were called Christians for the first time. Acts 11: 26 " and the **disciples** were first called **Christians** in Antioch"

**THERE ARE FOUR BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DISCIPLESHIP:**

**Luke 9 : 23 :** "Then He said to them all: "If anyone would come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross daily and follow me." (Matt 16 : 24; Mark 8 : 34,38)

Self-denial means to make myself nothing, and this every day!

This also means crucifying yourself with Christ.

We must all come to the place where we can say: *"I have been crucified with Christ; it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me."*

**Gal 2: 20**

**John 15: 8** "This is to My Father's glory, that you bear much fruit, showing yourselves to be My disciples."

A true disciple bears spiritual fruit !

Investigate your life in the light of the fruit mentioned in **Gal 5: 22**

**The Living Bible translates Gal. 5:22 as follows.**

"But when the Holy Spirit controls your lives He will produce this kind of fruit in us: love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, and self-control;"

**John 8 : 31:** "To the Jews who had believed Him, Jesus said: "If you hold to My teaching, you are really My disciples". (John 15 : 7)

A true disciple of the Jesus Christ does what the Word of God says, irrespective of the opinions of others. Can you pass this test?

**Luke 14: 26-35: This is a scripture to study.**

To be saved costs nothing (Isa. 55 :1) But to be a true disciple costs everything.

The word “**hates**” in Luke 14 means to “**love less**”.

In Romans 9: 13 we read: “**Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated.**”

We must expect that God will love those who don't honestly serve Him less than those who seek Him with their whole heart.

The word “hate” in Luke 14:26 is not a good translation because God requires that I should love and honour my parents.

Eph 6: 2,3: “Honour your father and mother,” which is the first commandment with a promise: “that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth.”

In addition the Bible teaches that no-one will hate his own flesh !  
(Eph 5:29)

However what Jesus wants to teach us in Luke 14: 26 is that I must love my mother and father, my wife, my children, and my life less than I love God.

Luke 14:26 is translated in the Living Bible as follows:

*“Anyone who wants to be my follower must love Me far more than he does his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers or sisters- yes, more than his own life.- otherwise he cannot be My disciple.”*

And what about my possessions? **(Luke 14: 33)**

My possessions must not possess me. This means that I must not become a slave of my possessions. It's not sinful to possess certain things but it is a sin if they rule over me.

Read what happened to the man in Luke 12 that was possessed by his own possessions

**A closing statement :**

It's a pity that there are so many “**secret disciples**” today

**John 12: 42; John 19: 38; John 7: 13**

What would a bridegroom say if his bride says : “I will be your bride but only in secret; no-one must know ” Such a relationship would be worthless. Those that don't want to be disciples will lose their flavour like salt and become useless. Luke 14: 34,35;

## **THE BAPTISM OF THE BELIEVER**

The first command in Matt. 28: 19 is : “Go and make disciples” but there is also a second command namely baptism, and we need to look at this. After we have confessed our sins and received Jesus as our personal saviour, the next step is to be baptised according to the command in the Scriptures. Let us examine this command verse by verse and decide after this to be obedient to God.

If you haven't undergone believer's baptism, follow Jesus through the waters of baptism. If you have been baptised, study this teaching to insure a strong foundation in your life.

### **Matt. 3:11**

The words “with water” do not refer to the method of baptism, but rather the element that is used. In other words, a person uses water to baptise.

### **Matt. 3:13-17**

Jesus was baptised in the Jordan river at the age of thirty (Luke 3:23) by John the Baptist. Take note of the words “He went up out of the water” which surely indicate that Jesus was actually in the water. Jesus was in the water so that John could baptise him by immersion: Otherwise what would the value be of Jesus going into the water if he was just going to be sprinkled?

### **Matt. 28:19**

It is not stated here that the nations must be baptised but rather the disciples out of the nations.

### **Mark 16:16**

This was the last message Jesus preached to His disciples. This emphasises the importance of baptism.

There must definitely first be faith in our hearts before we can be baptised (Acts 8:37)

Because babies do not have faith, they cannot be baptised.

What happens to babies, will they not be lost if they are not baptised ?

No, according to Mark 10: 14 the kingdom of heaven belongs to them.

### **John.3:23**

John needed a lot of water to baptise because baptism occurred by immersion. This is also why the people had to go to Aenon near Salem to be baptised because there was enough water. These days we still need a lot of water to baptise people by immersion.

### **Acts 2:38,39**

You must first repent before you can be baptised. Baptism is a definite COMMAND as given by Peter in verse 38. However the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a PROMISE, and therefore the promise in verse 39 refers to the Holy Spirit.

**Acts 8: 12**

It is clear that men and woman that believed were baptised.

**Acts 8: 35-39**

The one doing the baptising as well as the one baptized were **IN** the water. Why? Because it is necessary for both to be in the water so that immersion can occur. Philip and the Ethiopian eunuch would surely not have wet the most of their bodies only to put a few drops on the eunuch's head?

It's unthinkable that the eunuch would have undertaken this long trip to Jerusalem without carrying water. Nevertheless, Philip did not use this water because baptism is not sprinkling

**Acts 10:44-48**

Cornelius and his family were people filled with the Holy Spirit and who spoke in tongues. Therefore they qualified to be baptised in water.

**Rom 6:3-4**

Baptism represents a spiritual burial, and to bury means to cover. By immersion we undergo a spiritual burial to be resurrected with a new life. One wouldn't bury someone with a few grains of sand would you ?

**Eph.4: 5** "One Lord, one faith, one baptism..."

How can there be different types of baptism then?

**Col 2: 11-12**

Baptism did not come in the place of circumcision, because this circumcision refers to "not done with hands" in other words a circumcision of the heart, is namely repentance. (Compare Deut. 10: 16)

Deut 30:6; Jer. 4: 4; Rom 2: 28-29 -- Circumcision is that of the heart.

Circumcision was only for Israel and only for males! If baptism came in the place of circumcision, then only males could be baptised.

**1 Cor 1:17** "For Christ did not send me to baptize, but to preach the gospel."

We must understand this text correctly.

Baptism is part of the gospel but because there was division amongst the Corinthians, Paul wrote these words to them. (Read the preceding verses to understand it better: v 10-16) Paul definitely preached about baptism and baptised people himself.

(Acts 16:10-15;30-33; Acts 18:8)

**1 Pet. 3:18-21** "For Christ died for sins once for all, the righteous for the unrighteous, to bring you to God. He was put to death in the body but made alive by the Spirit, through whom also He went and preached to the spirits in prison who disobeyed long ago when God waited patiently in the days of Noah while the ark was being built. In it only a few people, eight in all, were saved through water, and this water symbolizes baptism that now saves you

also – not the removal of dirt from the body but the pledge of a good conscience towards God. It saves you by the resurrection of Christ.” In the Old Testament the ark saved 8 people. According to the New Testament everyone who believes and is baptised will be saved. Mark 16:16

No wonder the Pharisees and Sadducees wanted to be baptised. They were afraid that God’s judgement would fall on them if they weren’t baptised. Matt. 3:7,8

***You are challenged:***

*Be baptised so that you can have a good conscience before God!*

# **THE BAPTISM IN THE HOLY SPIRIT**

## **Have you received the Holy Spirit?**

You may answer me by saying: “Didn’t I get the Holy Spirit when I repented?”

Yes, you received the Holy Spirit when you repented because it is the Holy Spirit that convicted you of your sins. **(John 16:8)**, and it is the Spirit that leads you and testifies with your spirit, that you are God’s child.  
**(Rom. 8:14, 16)**

However, with the baptism with the Holy Spirit He takes hold of you!

**The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a promise for every child of God....no one is excluded because God is not a respecter of persons.**

John the Baptist said that Jesus is the baptiser in the Holy Spirit. (Read Matt.3:11 and also Luke 3:16)

As Jesus committed himself to John the Baptist to be baptised in the Jordan river, so we must commit ourselves to Jesus so that He can baptise us in “the river of living water” namely His Holy Spirit.

**The Holy Spirit is for all of us, because Jesus said in Luke 11:13** “If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him.”

## **WHAT WAS THE EXPERIENCE OF THOSE WE READ OF IN THE BIBLE THAT WERE BAPTISED IN THE HOLY SPIRIT?**

### **Pentecost day – Acts 2:1-4**

**Verse 4:** “And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance”

**The Amplified Bible translates this verse:** *“They were all filled – diffused (meaning all over) – throughout their souls (that is: mind; will and emotions) with the Holy Spirit”* **This is what the Holy Spirit will do for you!!**

In this Scripture, being filled with the Holy Spirit and speaking in tongues is one of our best examples we find in the Bible. This was how God introduced this experience into the Church.

Those filled with the Holy Spirit on the day of Pentecost spoke in tongues as the Holy Spirit enabled them (v.4) and they experienced power and boldness. Peter was initially shy and denied knowing Jesus in the palace but after he was filled with God’s Spirit he had no fear in testifying about Jesus and preached a great sermon that helped 3000 to come to Christ on that day!

There’s no doubt that the disciples’ names were already written in heaven before they received the baptism in the Holy Spirit. **(Luke 10:20)**

They certainly evidenced a strong spiritual experience prior to the outpouring at Pentecost. Evidence of this can be seen by the facts that:

- *They were in unity and in one accord (Acts 1:14, 21)*
- *They were continually in the temple praising and blessing God (Luke 24:53)*

### **Acts 4:31**

Here the disciples again were filled with the Holy Spirit and the effect was that they proclaimed the Word of God with boldness.

### **Samaria**

#### **Acts 8:14-17**

*“Now when the apostles who were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of the God, they sent Peter and John to them, who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Spirit. For as yet He had fallen upon none of them. They had only been baptised in the name of the Lord Jesus. Then they laid hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit.”*

**Note** Though the word “tongues” is not mentioned in this passage, we notice that Simon saw the manifestation of the Spirit as the apostles laid hands on the people. He had already seen healings and casting out of devils, yet, he had not seen anything like what took place when the disciples received the Holy Ghost.

We can only conclude that he saw the same manifestation which occurred in the other four Pentecostal experiences in the book of Acts.

#### **Acts 10:44-46 – Cornelius’ household**

*“While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell upon all those who heard the word. And those of the circumcision who believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because the gift of the Holy Spirit had been poured out on the Gentiles also. **For they heard them speak with tongues and magnify God...**”*

Here again the “gift of the Holy Ghost” was evidenced by speaking in other tongues.

The tongues were the sign to Peter and the Jews that these Gentiles had received.

Throughout time the experience has always been the same when people were filled with God’s Spirit.

#### **The Ephesians – Acts 19:1-6**

In verses 1,2 we read: “...Paul, having passed through the upper regions, came to Ephesus. And finding some disciples he said to them: ‘Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed? So they said to him, we have not so much as heard whether there is a Holy Spirit’”

**In verse six, he laid hands upon them and the Holy Ghost came on them and they “spoke with tongues and prophesied.”**

Again, tongues is connected with receiving the Spirit. We must, therefore, conclude that tongues is the Scriptural evidence that one has been filled with the Holy Spirit.



Often people have a very real visitation from the Holy Spirit which is to them a real mountaintop experience, yet they do not yield to the Spirit and speak in tongues.

They often insist that they have received the Spirit because of the reality of the experience. This, of course, must be respected by all.

But they should need to be taught to yield to the Spirit and allow Him to express Himself through their speech organs.

### **IS TONGUES SO IMPORTANT?**

- You are talking **DIRECTLY** to God. (1Cor 14:2)
- You speak **MYSTERIES** through the Spirit, and not even the devil understand what you are saying! (1Cor 14:2)
- When you speak in tongues, you **EDIFY** yourself. (1Cor 14:4)
- When you speak in tongues, you don't pray with your mind, but with your **SPIRIT**.
- You can **WORSHIP** God by praying in tongues.(Acts 10;46)  
Tongues create a new dimension of worship in your life.
- Because you pray in the Spirit, your prayer is not **limited** to your intellectual abilities, because the Spirit **intercedes** when we pray. (Rom 8:26,7)

### **WHY DO WE NEED THE BAPTISM IN THE HOLY SPIRIT?**

**Matt. 10:19,20:** "But when they arrest you, do not worry about what to say or how to say it. At that time you will be given what to say, for it will not be you speaking, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you."

In emergencies when the child of God must defend him or herself, the Holy Spirit will give us the words to speak! (Also compare Mark 13:11)

**John 6:63:** "The Spirit gives life; the flesh counts for nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life."

If we long for spiritual life, we need the Holy Spirit in our lives. (2 Cor.3:6)  
Do you "thirst" for new life in your spirit? Then desire the fullness of the Holy Spirit!

**John 15:26** "When the Comforter comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father, He will testify about me."

**The Holy Spirit will teach us and glorify Jesus in and through us.**

**John 16:13** "But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all truth. He will not speak on His own; He will speak only what He hears, and He will tell you what is yet to come."

**We need the Holy Spirit to guide us into all truth. (Also read: Rom.8:14)**

**Acts 1:8:** "But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth."

**The Holy Spirit gives us power to testify.**

**As believers we must be witnesses for Jesus, and therefore we need the fullness of the Spirit in our lives.**

**Rom 8:16:** "The Spirit Himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children."

**The presence of the Holy Spirit gives us assurance that we belong to God.**

**Romans 8:26** "In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weakness. We do not know what we ought to pray for, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groans that words cannot express."

**Indeed we need the Holy Spirit to help us in our prayer life.**

**Prepare your heart to receive by seeking and asking for the Holy Spirit. This means you cannot take a neutral position, but expect that God will pour out His Holy Spirit in your life.**

**Luke 11:9-13** – *"So I say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you. For everyone who asks receives, and he who seeks finds, and to him who knocks it will be opened. If a son asks for bread from any father among you, will he give him a stone? Or if he asks for a fish, will he give him a serpent instead of a fish? Or if he asks for an egg, will he offer him a scorpion? **If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him?**"*

**You could ask a believer to lay hands on you and pray with you that God will baptise you in His Holy Spirit.**

**This was done on several occasions in Scripture. (Acts 8:17; 19:6)**

## **FAITH in GOD**

Study chapter eleven in the book of Hebrews.

God values the teaching concerning faith so important that an entire chapter in the Bible is devoted to faith. Many name Hebrews eleven as the “Faith Chapter”.

**Heb.11:1 Reads as follows in the Living Bible “What is faith? It is the confident assurance that something we want is going to happen. It is the certainty that what we hope for is waiting for us, even though we cannot see it ahead.”**

In Heb. 11:24-27 we read the following which happened to Moses: *“By faith Moses, when he became of age, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh’s daughter, choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God than to enjoy the passing pleasures of sin, esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt; for he looked to the reward. By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king; for he endured as seeing Him who is invisible.”*

Moses had a dream in his heart about the real God, even if he did not see Him as the Egyptians saw their idols as their gods.

Verse six in this chapter says: *“But without faith it is impossible to please God, for he who comes to God believes that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him.”*

Believe that God exists and that He will provide whatever you need if you seek Him in your life.

Past. Reinhardt Bonnke, the renowned world evangelist in Africa, once said that if you trust God for a caravan you should start building a shed for your caravan. Faith is as a signed cheque! You just have to fill in your needs.

Dr. Paul Yonggi Cho from Korea believed for his first bicycle and desk. In faith he told his assembly during a morning service that he owned a bicycle and desk. At the end of the service the whole church went with him to his flat to see his bicycle and desk. (At that time he had a small congregation) When they arrived at the apartment there was nothing! In the group that came with them there was a pregnant woman. He asked her if she had a baby. “Oh yes” she answered. “But I can’t see the baby” he replied. She answered “The baby is inside me” He then answered the group: “Likewise I am pregnant with a bicycle and desk” Nobody in his church ever forgot this message.

**Faith is to know that the things that we expect will happen.**

Heb. 11:1 *“Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.”*

Yes, sometimes we have to wait for the things we hoped for. But never lose the dream (or passion) in your heart for those things you are trusting God for. **Faith is to confess with your MOUTH what God had said.**

In Romans 10:8 we read: *“The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart” (that is the word of faith which we preach)*

And in 2 Corinthians 4:13 Paul writes: *“And since we have the same spirit of faith, according to what is written ‘I believed and therefore I spoke’ we also believe and therefore speak.”*

When we speak with our mouth what we believe in our hearts, we release faith.

No wonder Bartholomew, the blind man, shouted louder and louder, when the crowd wanted to stop him from calling out to Jesus.

In Mark 10:48,49 we read these words: *“The many warned him to be quiet; but he cried out all the more, ‘Son of David, have mercy on me !’ So Jesus stood still and commanded him to be called. Then they called the blind man, saying to him, ‘Be of good cheer. Rise, He is calling you.’”*

Nothing should stop you from crying out to God in faith.

### **EXAMPLES IN THE BIBLE HOW MEN OF GOD SPOKE OUT WORDS OF FAITH:**

Elijah on mount Carmel, when he was confronted by the four hundred prophets of Baal.

Between him and them they decided that the God that will be able to answer with fire will be the real God of Israel. They prayed to their gods and nothing happened but when Elijah prayed we read: *“Elijah the prophet came Near and said: ‘Lord God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, let it be known this day that You are God in Israel and I am Your servant, and that I have done all these things at Your word.....Then the fire of the Lord fell and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood and the stones and the dust, and it licked up the water that was in the trench.”* (1 Kings. 18:36-39)

Paul was, as a prisoner, on a boat on his way to Rome when the storm came up on the ocean. A lot of fear came over everyone on the boat, but Paul had faith in his heart in his God. He told everyone that God met with him through an angel the night before and told him that all will be saved. If they listened to him. His words of faith was *“Therefore take heart, men, for I believe God that it will be just as it was told me.”* (Acts. 27:25)

### **Did you know that you can speak to your “mountain” of problem ?**

Jesus said in Mark. 11:23 these words: *“I say to you, who-ever says to this mountain, ‘Be removed and be cast into the sea, and does not doubt in his heart, but believes that those things he says will be done, he will have whatever he says.”* (Whatever he what? Whatever he says with his mouth)

You can speak to your “mountain” of sickness, because through Jesus’ wounds we are healed. In 1 Peter 2:24 we read: *“by whose stripes you were healed.*

Speak to your FINANCES.

To your mountain of finances, you say that because you give God your tithes you know that He promised to open heavens windows over your life according to **Malachi 3:10**

Speak to your financial mountain and tell that “Mountain” that you believe that God will supply all your needs according to His riches.

Also make the promise in the book of **Philippians 4:19** your own.

Quote the scriptures over your finances, trusting God to confirm His Word.

Confess God’s promises over your life like Mary did in Luke. 1:37,38 “For with God nothing will be impossible. Then Mary said, “Behold the maidservant of the Lord. Let it be to me according to your word.”

**Faith is the willingness to SACRIFICE.**

“Show me what you are willing to sacrifice and I will know how much faith you have.”

**In Gen. 22 we learn that FAITH is willing to SACRIFICE.**

The lessons that we learn in Gen.22 are:

All of us are tested (verse 1,2)

Abraham (age 125) where asked to sacrifice Isaac (age 25) as a burnt offering. (Lev. 1)

Abraham had to offer what God promised him, namely Isaac his only son.

Listen to someone who has faith in his heart (verse 5) Abraham said: “Stay here with the donkey; the lad and I will go yonder and worship, and we WILL COME BACK to you”.

Read Gen. 22:6-11

*If you believe rivers of living water will flow out of your heart  
(John. 7.37-39)*

**But listen very carefully:**

If you have faith in God you will sometimes do things that others will not understand.

**Noah** built an ark far from the ocean while it has never rained before!

Heb.11: 7

**Abraham** moved away to an unknown land when he was called by God not knowing where he was going! **Heb. 11:8** *“By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called (by God) to go out to the place which he would receive as an inheritance. And he went out, not knowing where he was going.”*

**We usually say that if God leads He leads very clearly.**

However, Israel did not always understand the journey through the desert. God said they must move while just ahead the enemy was waiting to fight them and often killed many of them. How do we understand this?

The only clear thing Israel had in the wilderness was the cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night.

What we have today is God’s Word and His Holy Spirit that will lead us.

THERE ARE TIMES THAT GOD TAKES AWAY THE THINGS THAT WE  
CAN SEE SO THAT WE WILL TRUST HIM COMPLETELY

Think what happened to the widow of Zarephath we read of in 1 Kings 17. She had to give away the handful of flour and the little bit of oil she had to the prophet of God. So she had to give away what she could see to a man of God before God could multiply what she gave. We read that all her needs were met.

Read for yourself the story in 1 Kings 17:13-16

IF YOU CAN BELIEVE, YOU WILL SEE THE GLORY OF GOD.

This is what Jesus said to Mary after her brother Lazarus died. John. 11:40

**RAISE YOUR SHIELD OF FAITH BEFORE THE LORD SO THAT HE CAN  
CONFIRM HIS WORD AND HIS WILL IN YOUR LIFE!**

# **THE POWER OF OUR WORDS**

## **Our words have great power. Positive as well as negative.**

Prov. 18:21 “Death and life are in the power of the tongue, and those who love it will eat its fruit.”

### **THERE IS DEATH IN THE POWER OF THE TONGUE**

With the tongue friendships are destroyed

Prov. 16:28 “a whisperer separates the best of friends”

The tongue is the cause of many spiritual wrecks along the path of life.

Take time to read James 3:1-9

### **WE MUST PAY ATTENTION TO OUR WORDS. WE USE OUR WORDS WRONGLY**

“I’m afraid this and that is going to happen”

“How is YOUR sickness” (Sickness belongs to the devil)

“This is a family sickness – the Lord visits us into the 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> generation”

*(Read Ex. 20:5 and you will find that this is for those who “hate” God. If you do not hate God, but love Him, this does not apply to you and your loved ones)*

“I know I’m busy getting the flue”

“Each year this time I’m getting the same sickness“

Stop doing this and start speaking life, health and prosperity.

Take note of some other wise words Solomon wrote in Proverbs:

Prov. 13:3 “He who guards his mouth preserves his life. But he who opens wide his lips shall have destruction.” (Meaning if you are speaking too much)

Prov. 21:23 “Whoever guards his mouth and tongue keeps his soul from troubles.”

Jesus added the following in Matt. 12:37 “For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned”

Peter taught us what we should do if we wanted a long and blessed life. He

said in 1 Pet. 3:10 “For he who would love life and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil. And his lips from speaking deceit”

### **THANK GOD, THERE IS ALSO LIFE IN THE POWER OF THE TONGUE!**

Prov. 16:24 “Pleasant words are like a honeycomb. Sweetness to the soul and health to the bones” Remember this scripture whenever you visit the sick. Never tell the sick person what you see with your eyes, even if they look bad. Always speak life and health into their hearts.

### **WE CAN EVEN OVERCOME THE DEVIL WITH OUR TONGUE.**

Rev. 12:11 “And they overcame him (the devil) by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony, (Read from verse 7)

Listen to the conversation David had with Goliath.

He said to Goliath *“You come to me with a sword, with a spear, and with a javelin. But I come to you in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. This day the Lord will deliver you into my hand, and I will strike you and take your head from you (listen to David’s statement of faith) And this day I will give the carcasses of the camp of the Philistines to the birds of the air and the wild beasts of the earth, that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel. Then all this assembly shall know that the Lord does not save with sword and spear; for the battle is the Lord’s, and He will give you into our hands.”* 1 Sam. 17:45-47

Think what happened to the Greek woman that came to Jesus so that He could deliver her daughter from a demon.

Jesus answered her by saying that He could not take the bread that He wanted to give to Israel (His children) and give some of it to the Gentiles. And even referred to the Gentiles as “dogs”

This did not put her off because her need was a great one. This is what we read in Mark. 7:28 – 29; “And she answered and said to Him. ‘Yes, Lord, yet even the little dogs under the table eat from the children’s crumbs.’ And He said to Her. “FOR THIS SAYING go your way; the demon has gone out of your daughter.”

This is a great story to teach us about the power of our words.

**WHEN YOU HAVE RECEIVED A CLEAR WORD FROM THE LORD YOU CAN CONFESS IT BOLDLY.**

**The Bible says in 2 Cor. 4:13;** “ And since we have the same spirit of faith, according to what is written, “I believed and therefore I spoke” we also believe and therefore speak.”

We have creative power in our words. Use your words to the glory of God.

**Faith is in your mouth and must be confessed. Rom. 10:8-10**

BECAUSE WE CAN MOVE MOUNTAINS OF PROBLEMS WITH OUR TONGUE ACCORDING TO WHAT JESUS SAID IN **Mark. 11:23-24** WE MUST ALWAYS KNOW HOW WE TALK TO OUR “MOUNTAINS”

- Make sure that you speak out of a position of authority. Do not feel that your “mountain” is too big for you. With God all things are possible.
- Make sure that you use the right words when you address your “mountain”



## HOW WOULD YOU TALK WITH THE FOLLOWING MOUNTAINS?

### **Financial mountain?**

Use a scripture as written in Phil. 4:19 and believe God will *supply all your needs* **Sickness?** Use a scripture as written in 1 Pet.2:24

**Sin?** When sin wants to knock at your heart's door. Remember what God has done with your sins He forgave. He took them away from you as far as the East is from the West. (There is no way you will find where East and West could be! -- Ps. 103:12)

Use God's Word each time you talk to your problem.

Jesus overcame the devil's temptation by using the Word against him.

(Matt. 4)

CONFESS THE WORD OF GOD LOUD ENOUGH FOR YOU TO HEAR IT.

### FOR EXAMPLE:

**Rom. 8:1** "There is therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who do not walk according to the flesh, but according to the Spirit."

Say aloud: "Because I am in Christ, I am free from condemnation!"

**Rom. 8:31** "If God is for us, who can be against us?"

**Rom 8:37** "Yet in all these things we are more than conquerors through Him who loved us."

**Rom. 10:11** "Whoever believes in Him will not be put to shame"

**1 Cor. 3:16** "I am the temple of God, and the Spirit of God dwells in me."

**1 John 4:4** "He who lives in me is greater than he who lives in the world."

**2 Cor. 5:17** "Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new."

**2 Cor. 9:6** "But this I say: He who sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and he who sows bountifully will also reap bountifully."

**2 Cor. 10:4,5** "Our weapons are mighty in God for pulling down strongholds. We can disrupt the devil's plans and bring every thought into captivity to obedience to Christ."

**Eph. 1:3, 7, 11** "In Him I am blessed."

"In Him I am redeemed through His blood and I have obtained an inheritance !"

**Phil. 1:21** "For to me, to live is Christ, and to die is gain"

**2 Tim. 1:7** "For God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of power and of love and of a sound mind."

**1 Pet. 5:7** "Casting all my care upon Him, for He cares for me."

**Rev. 12:11** "And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony."

### Oh! For a touch with God's live coal of fire on our lips, as what happened to Isaiah the prophet in Isaiah 6.6-7.

*"Then one of the seraphim flew to me, having in his hand a live coal which he had taken with the tongs from the altar. And he touched my mouth with it and said: 'Behold, this has touched your lips; Your iniquity is taken away, and your sins purged (washed away)'"*

# **DIVINE HEALING**

Please note we call it “Divine healing” and NOT “Faith healing”.  
In faith healing the emphasis is on the person’s FAITH.

Although faith is needed to be healed, it’s **God** that heals. Therefore we talk of **Divine healing**

## IT IS GOD’S WILL TO HEAL.

Right at the beginning of the Bible God revealed himself as Jahweh-Rapha  
Ex 15:26 “I am the Lord who heals you”

God doesn’t make you sick and then heal you.

A kingdom that is divided against itself cannot stand. (Luke 11:17,18)

It is God’s will that you be healthy. (3 John verse 2)

Healing forms part of the work of Reconciliation Jesus did on the cross.

Isa 53: 4, 5; 1 Pet. 2:24; Matt. 8:17

## JESUS’ WHOLE MINISTRY WAS HEALING AND DELIVERANCE.

Matt 4:23; 8:16; 14:36; Luke 7:21; Acts 10:38

## THE MINISTRY OF HEALING WAS CONTINUED BY THE EARLY CHURCH

Acts 3:1-9; 8:5-8; 9: 33-34; 14:8-10; 9: 11-12; 28: 8-9.

## THE CHURCH IN ACTS GREW TREMENDOUSLY AS A RESULT OF SIGNS AND WONDERS

Acts 4: 4; 5: 12-16; 9: 32-35

There were times in church history where miracles occurred to a lesser extent  
but they have never ceased!

## THERE ARE THREE TYPES OF SICKNESS

- Sickness caused in our **spirit** through personal sin.
- **Emotional** sickness and problems (like stress) caused by wounds from the past.
- **Physical** sickness in our body caused by diseases and accidents.

## HOW DOES HEALING TAKE PLACE?

(1) When we pray in the **name of Jesus** (John 14:3; Ac 3: 6, 16)

(2) By the **laying on of hands** (Mark 6:5; 8:23; 16:18; Luke 4:40; 13:13.)

(3) By **anointing with oil** (Mark 6:13; James 5: 14)

(4) By applying **cloths** or **handkerchiefs**. (Acts 19:11,12)

## THE TIME SPAN OF HEALING

Some healings are **instantaneous**.

Others take place **later**. (The 10 lepers were healed on their way – Luke 17)

## WHY DO SOME PEOPLE NOT RECEIVE HEALING?

Lack of faith (Matt. 13:58)

### Wrong concepts such as:

- God has placed sickness on me as a cross
- Sickness will enrich me spiritually
- Sickness keeps me humble

Sin can be the cause that healing doesn't come (Isa 59:1,2; John 5:14)  
But sin is not always the reason. (John 9: 1-3)

## HOW CAN ONE KEEP YOUR HEALING?

Honour the LORD for your healing. (Ps 50:15; 103:1,2)

Witness about it to others. (John 9:24,25 Acts 4:29,30)

Do not allow doubt. (Matt 14:31)

Do not sin any more (John 5:14)

Commit yourself to God's service (Rom 6:13)

And obviously seek refuge with the LORD (Ps 91)

## **CONCLUSION:**

Jesus is the Great Physician and has never changed.

Just as it is God's will that all come to repentance (2 Peter 3:9)

so is it His will to heal (1 Pet. 2:24)

# **THE NEW BIRTH**

## **What is the meaning of The New Birth?**

The word “New Birth” or “Born again” says it all. In other words it is a “second birth”. The first birth is necessary to live on earth, and the second birth is necessary to enter the Kingdom of God. The new birth experience is the only way God gave to mankind, by which to receive a Godly nature. **(2 Pet. 1:4)**  
The new birth is when God gives you a “New Heart”

**Ezek. 36:26 & 27** ”I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will take the heart of stone out of your flesh and give you a heart of flesh. I will put My Spirit within you and cause you to walk in My statutes, and you will keep My judgments and do them.”

Let us read **John 3:1-10**: “There was a man of the Pharisees named Nicodemus, a ruler of the Jews. This man came to Jesus by night and said to Him, Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher come from God; for no one can do these signs that You do unless God is with him. Jesus answered and said to him: Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. Nicodemus said to Him: How can a man be born when he is old? Can he enter a second time into his mother’s womb and be born? Jesus answered: Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. Do not marvel that I said to you, ‘You must be born again.’ The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear the sound of it, but cannot tell where it comes from and where it goes. So is everyone who is born of the Spirit. Nicodemus answered and said to Him: How can these things be? Jesus answered and said to him: Are you the teacher of Israel, and do not know these things?”

Jesus did not say: “Unless a bad person gets born again.” Jesus was speaking to a ruler of Israel; yet he needed to be born again.

**John 3: 8** “The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear the sound of it, but cannot tell where it comes from and where it goes. So is everyone who is born of the Spirit”

Here we read of the moving of the leaves, the dust blowing and the sailing of the ships. By this we know the wind is at work! Therefore, we do not understand how the Spirit of God works, but when He works in our lives everybody will know that.

## **How does the New Birth take place in our lives?**

Firstly it is necessary for us to turn to God and to repent. Repentance means to turn from my sinful ways and to turn to God.

The Word of God must reach into the heart of man to bring about true repentance. We read in **1 Peter 1:23**: “having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever.”

Secondly it is also necessary for us to go through the “washing of regeneration”

**Titus 3:5**: “not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to His mercy He saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit.”

**Please Note**: Baptism is not the new birth. Baptism completes the new birth. This is what happened to Paul in **Acts 22:16**.

That is why Titus does not say that the washing is the new birth, but that it is the washing of regeneration. This washing (the baptism) is strongly connected to the new birth. Examples in the word, of people that were baptized after their new birth experience, are found in **Acts 8:37, 38**: “Then Philip said, If you believe with all your heart, you may, (be Baptised – see verse 36) And he answered and said: I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. So he commanded the chariot to stand still. And both Phillip and the eunuch went down into the water, and he baptised him”

Also **Acts 9:6,18**: So he, trembling and astonished, said, Lord, what do you want me to do? Then the Lord said to him: Arise and go into the city, and you will be told what you must do. Immediately there fell from his eyes something like scales, and he received his sight at once; and he arose and was baptised.”

**Acts 16:31-33**: So they said, “Believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, and you will be saved, you and your household.” Then they spoke to him and to all who were in his house. And he took them the same hour of the night and washed their stripes. And immediately he and all his family were baptised.”

### **The Results of the New Birth.**

a) You become a Joint Heir of the Kingdom of God.

**John 3:3**: Jesus answered and said to him, “Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”

b) You receive eternal life

**1 John 3:14**: “We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love the brethren. He who does not love his brother abides in death.”

**1 John 5:12 -13**: “He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. These things I have written to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may continue to believe in the name of the Son of God.”

c) You have the authority to say you are a child of God.

**John 1:12-13**: “But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, to those who believe in His name: who were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.”

d) You are made a new creation

**2 Corinthians 5:17:** “Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation, old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.”

### **How will I know that I am Born Again?**

**1 John 3:9** “Whoever has been born of God does not sin, for His seed remains in him; and he cannot sin, because he has been born of God.”  
The same author tells us what to do if we fall into sin.

**1 John 1:7,9.** “But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin. If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.”

**The Living Bible translates 1 John 3:9: as follows:** “The person who has been born into God’s family does not make a practice of sinning, because now God’s life is in him; so he can’t keep on sinning, for this new life has been born into him and controls him – he has been born again.”

**The Amplified Bible reads as follows:** “No one born (begotten) of God (deliberately and knowingly) habitually practises sin, for God’s nature abides in him – His principle of life, the Devine sperm, remains permanently within him – and he cannot practise sinning because he is born (begotten) of God.”

A child of God should not want you to sin, because he is born of God. If he does sin then he should know that he has somebody that is standing in the “gap” (one who intercedes for him) before our Heavenly Father, namely JESUS.

By repenting of his sins, God will forgive him.

**1 John 2:1,2:** “My little children, these things I write to you, so that you may not sin. And if anyone sins, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous. And He Himself is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the whole world.”

**1 John 5:1:** “Whoever believes that Jesus is the Christ is born of God, and everyone who loves Him who begot also loves him who is begotten of Him.”  
The name Christ means Saviour. Thus, if you can testify that He is your personal Saviour, you are born again.

Can you testify of the day that Jesus Christ saved you?

Have you received Jesus as your personal Saviour? **John 1:12:** “But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, to those who believe in His name.”

**1 John 5:6-8** “This is He who came by water and blood – Jesus Christ; not only by water, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit who bears witness,

because the Spirit is truth. For there are three that bear witness in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit; and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness on earth; the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three agree as one.”

Do you have all three these witnesses in your life? It will affirm your new birth.

### **The Witness of the Blood?**

In other words, **all** your sins are washed away through the Blood of Jesus Christ.

**1 John 1:7:** “But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His son cleanses us from all sin.

### **The witness of the water?**

In other words, were you baptised as Jesus was baptised?

**Matthew 3:13-17:** “Then Jesus came from Galilee to John at the Jordan to be baptized by him. And John tried to prevent Him saying, “I need to be baptized by You, and are You coming to me?” But Jesus answered and said to him, “Permit it to be so now, for thus it is fitting for us to fulfil all righteousness,” Then he allowed him. When He had been baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the spirit of God descending like a dove and alighting upon Him. And suddenly a voice came from heaven saying, “This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.”

### **The Witness of the Holy Spirit?**

In other words, can you confess that the Spirit of God witnesses with your spirit that you are a child of God ? **Rom. 8:16** “The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God”

**AS A NEW-BORN CHILD OF GOD, HELP OTHERS TO ALSO EXPERIENCE THIS!**

# **SANCTIFICATION**

## **What is Sanctification?**

It is the process that takes place in a person's life that brings them into a walk of holiness.

The meaning in Hebrew is: "To set apart" also translated as: "cut off", "placed one side" & "Dedicate to the Lord."

The meaning in Greek: (Hagiazo) "Isolate", "Separate"

**2 Corinthians 6:17:** "Therefore, come out from among them. And be separate, says the Lord. Do not touch what is unclean. And I will receive you."

In which area of our life must we strive for (holiness) sanctification ?

**I Thessalonians 5:23:** says that we must be sanctified in our spirit, soul (our mind) and body.

## **Why desire (holiness) sanctification?**

**Because it is God's will for us.**

**I Thessalonians 4: 3-7:** "For this is the will of God, your sanctification: that you should abstain from sexual immorality; that each of you should know how to possess his own vessel in sanctification and honour, not in passion of lust, like the gentiles who do not know God; that no one should take advantage of and defraud his brother in this matter, because the Lord is the avenger of all such, as we also forewarned you and testified. For God did not call us to uncleanness, but in holiness."

**I Peter 1:15-16:** "but as He who called you is holy, you also be holy in all you conduct, because it is written, "Be holy, for I am holy."

**Leviticus 20:26:** "And you shall be holy to Me, for I the Lord am holy, and have separated you from the peoples, that you should be mine."

**Hebrews 12: 14,15:** "Pursue peace with all people, and holiness, without which no one will see the Lord: looking carefully lest anyone fall short of the grace of God; lest any root of bitterness springing up cause trouble, and by this many become defiled."

## **HOW DOES SANCTIFICATION TAKE PLACE?**

### **Through the Word of God. John 17:17**

"Sanctify them by Your truth. Your word is truth"

Holiness can only come as we allow God's Word into our hearts.

No wonder that Billy Graham once said: "If you want Revival in your church, preach Holiness."



**Psalm 119:25:** “My soul clings to the dust; revive me according to your Word.”

If we are reading everything else except God’s Word, how can we expect to become holy? Remember the words of Jesus in **John 15:3:**

“You are already clean because of the word which I have spoken to you.”

The person who hungers and thirsts for the Word of God will find that by reading the Word, the process of holiness will take place in their life.

### **By laying down the wrong things in our lives:**

**2 Timothy 2:15-21:** “Be diligent to present yourself approved to God, a worker who does not need to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth. But shun profane and idle babblings, for they will increase to more ungodliness. And their message will spread like cancer. Hymenaeus and Philetus are of this sort, who have strayed concerning the truth, saying that the resurrection is already past; and they overthrow the faith of some. Nevertheless the solid foundation of God stands, having this seal; “The Lord knows those who are His,” and “Let everyone who names the name of Christ depart from iniquity. ”But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and silver, but also of wood and clay, some for honour and some for dishonour. Therefore if anyone cleanses himself from the latter, he will be a vessel for honour, sanctified and useful for the Master, prepared for every good work. “

### **By self-denial and crucifying the old man.**

We do not stand under the reign of the old man, but under the new.

Remember, holiness is a process that takes place in your new godly nature, and the more it grows, the more you stand under its reign, and the holier you become. Allow God to do the forming in your life. After all He is the sculptor.

The story of a world-renowned sculptor Michel-Angelo was told: that he was given a piece of marble that was so crooked and distorted that nobody wanted it. It was given to him to see if he could do something with it. After standing in front of it for a long time, he took his hammer and chisel and started to chisel it. Out of that Marble rock he made the world famous statue of David with his sling, which can be seen in Florence in Italy. Out of the one crooked side of the rock he made, the outstretched arm of David, and the other side, his foot, standing ready to throw the stone.

When we experience the new birth, we are placed into the hands of the Holy Spirit as a crooked rock so that He can change us day by day. That great task starts the very moment when Jesus said: “This rugged rock is mine – place it one side, he is set apart, I have claimed him. I have called him by his name, he is mine!” From that moment the Holy Spirit starts to work on the “rock”. It remains a lifelong task. It continues to be a lifelong struggle between the old man and the new man.

“When I see a tree in my garden that carries bad fruit, I prune it, then I graft in a healthier shoot or stem. I use the old branch and root system that is already firm in the ground, and place the shoot of another tree that bears other fruit. The old tree feeds the new to develop.

Every rose tree in our garden is grafted into a branch of a wild rose bush. The reason is that the wild rose bush is a very tough tree with strong roots and a quick grower. It gets cut down to the roots, then out of the new shoot that gets grafted on, grows out the most beautiful roses! Now you must be very careful, because if you are not careful you will find the old wild rose tree will send out it's own shoots again. It grows out of the ground again. When a rose tree has not been pruned for some time, you will find that the old roots grow out again. They never have flowers, they grow luxuriant and kill the shoots. There you have an example of the old and new life!” (As quoted from: The Fruit of the Spirit – by: F.E. O'B Geldenhuys.)

### **Holiness takes place as I walk in the Holy Spirit**

**Galatians 5:16:** “I say then: Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh.”

**The Living Bible:** “I advise you to obey only the Holy Spirit's instructions. He will tell you where to go and what to do, and then you won't always be doing the wrong things your evil nature wants you to.”

### **WRONG CONCEPTIONS REGARDING HOLINESS.**

#### **Holiness is not perfectionism.**

It is a process. It happens step by step.

When God said in **I Peter 1:16:** “Be holy, for I am holy.” He did not mean “As I am holy”. A Cup of water from the sea, is the same water as in the sea – but not in quantity.

Even Paul was striving towards holiness. **Philippians 3:12:** “Not that I have already attained, or am already perfected; but I press on, that I may lay hold of that for which Christ Jesus has also laid hold of me.”

#### **What about I John 3:9? Combine it with I John 1:7,9 and 1 John 2:1,2.**

He that is born out of God does not sin, because he is born out of God. He might sin, but then he must know that Jesus will forgive again and again.

#### **Holiness is not being free from temptation.**

You will find the closer you are living to God, the closer the devil lives to you!

The devil even tempted Jesus **Matthew 4:, Luke: 4.**

Also read: **Hebrews 4:15:** “For we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but was in all points tempted as we are, yet without sin. Although Jesus was tempted He did not sin.”

**Remember this: You have not sinned when you are tempted!**

You cannot help it when a crow flies over your head, but you can prevent it from making a nest in your hair.

### **Holiness is not Isolation.**

**John 17:15,16** (Jesus praying) “I do not pray that You should take them out of the world, but that You should keep them from the evil one. They are not of the world, just as I am not of the world.”

We are in this world, but do not allow the world to come into us.

Holiness does not mean that you must isolate yourself from the rest of the world, but it is separation from that which is evil and sinful. With the measure we withdraw from sin and dedicate ourselves to the Lord, we will develop the Christ-like nature.

### **Holiness does not mean keeping certain Laws.**

For many people holiness is what you wear, your appearance, lack of make up and refraining from many things.

**Col. 2:16-23:** “So let no one judge you in food or in drink, or regarding a festival or a new moon or Sabbath, which are a shadow of things to come, but the substance is of Christ. Let no one cheat you or your reward, taking delight in false humility and worship of angels, intruding into those things which he has not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind, and not holding fast to the Head, from whom all the body, nourished and knit together by joints and ligaments, grows with the increase that is from God. Therefore, if you died with Christ from the basic principles of the world, why, as though living in the world, do you subject yourselves to regulations – “Do not touch, do not taste, do not handle,” which all concern things which perish with the using – according to the commandments and doctrines of men? These things indeed have an appearance of wisdom in self-imposed religion, false humility, and neglect of the body, but are of no value against the indulgence of the flesh.”

In fact, in the end holiness will be revealed through your general behaviour or appearance, but – it is the result of the working of the Holy Spirit in a persons life, and not the application of certain rules and laws. Holiness takes place from inside out, and not the other way round.

### **AND NOW: WHAT IS THE IMPORTANCE OF HOLINESS TO ME?**

#### **It prepares me to appear before God.**

**Heb. 12:14:** “Pursue peace with all people, and holiness, without which no one will see the Lord;”

**I Thess. 5:23:** “Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you completely; and may your whole spirit, soul and body be preserved blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.”

**I John 2:28:** “And now, little children, abide in Him, that when He appears, we may have confidence and not be ashamed before Him at His coming.”

#### **A Holy life is a life of power.**

In **2 Kings 20:1-6:** we are told how God saved Hezekiah because of his sanctified life. “In those days Hezekiah was sick and near death. And Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, went to him and said to him, “Thus says the Lord: ‘Set your house in order, for you shall die, and not live.’ “ Then he turned his face toward the wall, and prayed to the Lord, saying, “Remember now, O

Lord, I pray, how I have walked before You in truth and with a loyal heart, and have done what was good in Your sight.” And Hezekiah wept bitterly. And it happened, before Isaiah had gone out into the middle court, that the word of the Lord came to him, saying, “Return and tell Hezekiah the leader of My people, “Thus says the Lord, the God of David your father: “I have heard your prayer, I have seen your tears, surely I will heal you. On the third day you shall go up to the house of the Lord. “And I will add to your days fifteen years. I will deliver you and this city from the hand of the king of Assyria; and I will defend this city for My own sake, and for the sake of my servant David.” ‘ “

Especially take a look at **verse 3**; Hezekiah’s sanctified life had so much power that it moved God to add fifteen years to his life.

**James 5:16:** “Confess your trespasses to one another, and pray for one another, that you may be healed. The effective, fervent prayer of a righteous man avails much.”

Righteousness before God releases power in your life.

**Conclusion:** Is this not the time to repeat the words that Joshua of old, called out, to the believers in **Joshua 3:5**: “And Joshua said to the people: Sanctify yourselves, for tomorrow the Lord will do wonders among you.”

**God is a God of wonders and He wants to perform wonders for His people.....But then we must sanctify ourselves!!!!**

# **TEMPTATION**

If I get tempted, what then??

How many well meaning Christians have asked this question? Many are under the impression that the devil has lost their address when they gave their life to Jesus Christ. Oh No!, The closer you live to Christ, the more you will find the devil shooting his arrows at you. Fortunately we have the full armour of God to conquer the devil!

**Ephesians 6:10-17:** “Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord and in the power of His might. Put on the whole armour of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in heavenly places. Therefore, take up the whole armour of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having girded your waist with truth, having put on the breastplate of righteousness, and having shod your feet with the preparation of the gospel of peace; above all, taking the shield of faith with which you will be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked one. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God;”

## **LET US STUDY THE TEMPTATION OF JESUS**

We read of this in Matt. 4 and Luke 4.

If the devil tempted Jesus, he would certainly tempt us.

In we read in 1 Cor. 10:12,13 these words: *“Therefore let him who thinks he stands take heed lest he fall.”* (You can also read 1 Peter 5:8,9)

Jesus was tempted by the devil straight after Jesus was baptised and the Spirit came upon Him in the Jordan River. Is that not our experience as well? The moment we obeyed God to be baptised, the enemy came with his attacks.

The devil is a sure enemy, but as child of God, I will not have to be ignorant to his plans.

**2 Corinthians 2:11:** “lest satan should take advantage of us; for we are not ignorant of his devices.”

## **There are three types of temptations.**

**Luke 4:13:** *“Now when the devil had ended every temptation, he departed from Him until an opportune time.(for a season)”*

The devil used all three tactics to tempt Jesus and left him for a season.

These words: “for a season” tell us that the devil does not give up on you but will return to tempt you again.

### **The devil usually tempts the weakest spot in your life.**

**Luke 4:2-4:** “being tempted for forty days by the devil. And in those days He ate nothing, and afterward, when they had ended He was hungry. And the devil said to Him, “If You are the Son of God, command this stone to become bread.” But Jesus answered him, saying, “It is written, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.”

After forty days Jesus was hungry, that is why the devil came with the temptation to turn the stones into bread. Normally this would have been a great miracle. If Jesus obeyed this instruction from the devil and performed the order, He would have bowed down to the devil.

Having fleshly desires is not sin, but to satisfy these desires in the wrong way is sinful. Think about Esau. It was not wrong to be hungry and desire soup, but to exchange his birthright for the soup was completely wrong.

### **The devil also tempts us in what we see.**

**Luke 4:5-8:** “Then the devil, taking Him up on a high mountain, showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said to Him, “All this authority I will give You, and their glory; for this has been delivered to me, and I give it to whomever I wish. “Therefore, if You will worship before me, all will be Yours. ”And Jesus answered and said to him, “Get behind Me, satan! For it is written, “You shall worship the Lord Your God, and Him only you shall serve.”

Jesus was tempted in what the devil showed Him. (the kingdoms of this world)

To see is not sin, but to desire things we see, if it is not the will of God for us, that is sin.

### **In verses 9-12, the devil uses God’s Word to tempt Jesus.**

Don’t think for one moment that the devil does not know the Bible. Learn this lesson how Jesus overcame the devil by saying: “It is written”  
Know God’s Word so that you can quote it to the devil

### **In 1 John 2:16: temptation is summed up like this:**

“For all that is in the world: **the lust of the flesh**, (Jesus was tempted when He was hungry) **the lust of the eyes**, (See what the devil showed Jesus) and **the pride of life**; is not of the Father but is of the world.”

### **The question now is: How can I overcome temptation?**

- Be filled with the Holy Ghost. **Luke 4:1,14:** “Then Jesus, being filled with the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit into the Wilderness.” “Then Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit to Galilee, and news of Him went out through all the surrounding region.”  
The power that Jesus had, was because He was filled with the Holy Spirit. No wonder Paul said the following: “I say then: Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh” **Galatians 5:16.**

- Make sure you find yourself in the place where you were led by God's Spirit. **(V. 1)** "When you are out of God's will, you are in total darkness"
- Know God's Word, so that you can use it against the devil. Make sure you know enough Bible verses so that you can use them, when needed.
- Have higher goals in life. We read this about Moses Hebrews 11:24-26: "By faith Moses, when he became of age, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter, choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God than to enjoy the passing pleasures of sin, esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt; for he looked to the reward."

Joseph is another example. Even though he had to flee from the wife of Potiphar and was thrown into jail completely innocent. He kept his eyes on a higher goal in life (Gen. 39 and 40)

**One thing we must clearly understand, and that is:**

I have not sinned if I have only been tempted. If temptation was sin, then Jesus sinned. He was tempted just as any of us but did not give in to temptation and thus did not sin.

**Hebrew 4:15:** "For we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but was in all points tempted as we are, yet without sin."

Remember God tempts no one, and He will also not let us be tempted more than we can endure.

**I Corinthians 10:13:** "No temptation has overtaken you except such as is common to man; but God is faithful, who will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you are able, but with the temptation will also make a way of escape, that you may be able to bear it."

**The question: "If I get tempted, what then?". Is clearly answered in the first chapter of James.**

Let us look at **James 1:2-4:** "My brethren, count it all joy when you fall into various trials, knowing that the testing of your faith produces patience. But let patience have its perfect work, that you may be perfect and complete, lacking nothing."

Thus it is very clear that James wanted to teach us not to get disheartened when temptation comes, but rather to receive it with joy.

Further James goes writing in **James 1:12-15:** "Blessed is the man who endures temptation; for when he has been approved, he will receive the crown of life which the Lord has promised to those who love Him. Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am tempted by God"; for God cannot be tempted by evil, nor does He Himself tempt anyone. But each one is tempted when he is drawn away by his own desires and enticed. Then, when desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, brings forth death."

Achan only sinned when he desired and took it...

**Joshua 7:20,21:** “And Achan answered Joshua and said, “ Indeed I have sinned against the Lord God of Israel, and this is what I have done: “When I saw among the spoils a beautiful Babylonian garment, two hundred shekels of silver, and a wedge of gold weighing fifty shekels, I coveted them and took them. And there they are, hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent, with the silver under it.”

Now we understand **James 1:15** better where it says:” Then, when desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, brings forth death.”

- There is a crown for everyone who overcomes temptation. (**verse 12.**)
- God tempts no-one. (**verse 13.**)

Here are more texts on temptation.

**Matthew 26:41:** “Watch and pray, lest you enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.”

**Luke 22:40:** “when He came to the place, He said to them, “Pray that you may not enter into temptation.”

**Galatians: 6:1:** “Brethren, if a man is overtaken in any trespass, you who are spiritual restore such a one in a spirit of gentleness, considering yourself lest you also be tempted.”

**2 Peter 2:9:** “then the Lord knows how to deliver the godly out of temptations and to reserve the unjust under punishment for the day of judgement.”



## **SOWING and REAPING**

**Gal 6:7-9** “Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatever a man sows, that he will also reap. For he who sows to his flesh will of the flesh reap corruption; but he who sows to the Spirit, will of the Spirit reap everlasting life. And let us not grow weary while doing good, for in due season we shall reap, if we do not lose heart.”

### **WHAT DO WE MEAN BY SOWING AND REAPING?**

It means that you give away that which you have – as seed which you put into the ground – so that you receive more back than what you gave.

#### **Anything you can GIVE is seed:**

Thoughts are Seeds Your thoughts rule your life. Whatever you thought until this day made you as you are

Words are Seed You have the power of life and death in your tongue  
(Prov. 18:21)

Love is Seed The more love you sow the more you will receive love from others.

Time is Seed Use your time correctly and you will experience great joy.

Patience is Seed The more patience you give others, the more you will have.

Mercy and Grace is Seed You know why I give grace ?Because I need grace.

Money is Seed According to (2 Cor. 9) we must give in abundance, then God will give us enough for ourselves and more than enough to give to others.

- If you are a “Sower” there will never be a day in your life that you have nothing.
- Something you already have to give is your Key to your Future. Use it !
- If you keep for yourself what you presently have, that is the most it will ever be.
- When you let go of what is in your hand, God will let go of what is in His Hand.
- Name your seed when you give it away (when you sow it)
- When you increase the size of your seed, you increase the size of your harvest
- If you have a NEED sow a SEED (Don't just pray about your need !)
- When God talks to you about a seed, He has a harvest for you on His mind

### **THERE IS A POSITIVE AS WELL AS A NEGATIVE THOUGHT IN SOWING AND REAPING:**

- If you sow outside the will of God, you will have trouble! Beware of the day when your land accuses you! **Job 31:38**
- King Hezekiah sowed that which was right during his lifetime, and he reaped 15 years. Read about this in **2 Kings 18:3-6.**
- Honour your parents and you will reap a good and long life!  
**Eph. 6:2,3** “Honour your father and mother, which is the first commandment with promise: that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth.”

### **WHATEVER YOU SOW YOU WILL REAP:**

This is a law of nature, but it is also a law of God's Kingdom.

You reap the same **sort** (kind) that you sowed! Jacob deceived his father Isaac, and Jacob's uncle deceived Jacob with Leah and Rachel.

You reap **more** than you sowed.

Sometimes you reap sooner than at other times.

Just be patient: **Gal 6:9** – *“And let us not be weary in well-doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not”*.

### **THERE ARE A NUMBER OF PEOPLE IN THE BIBLE WHO CAN TEACH US ABOUT SOWING AND REAPING:**

#### **ELIPHAZ TAUGHT JOB THE FOLLOWING:**

**Job 4:1-8** – *Then Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said (vs 3) Behold, thou hast instructed many, and thou has strengthened the weak hands. Thy words have upheld him that was falling, and thou hast strengthened the feeble knees. But now it is come upon thee, and thou art troubled.”* (Is God's Word perhaps speaking to you?)

(vs 8) *“Even as I have seen, they that plow iniquity, and sow wickedness, reap the same”*. Job! You will not sow wickedness; you need not be troubled.

Read what Job reaped in **Job 42:10-12**.

#### **WISE SOLOMON WANTS TO TEACH THOSE WHO DO CHARITY WORK, THE FOLLOWING ABOUT SOWING AND REAPING:**

**Eccl 11:1,6** *“Cast thy bread upon the waters: for thou shalt find it after many days. In the morning sow the seed, and in the evening withhold not thine hand: for you do not know which will prosper.”*

**Another translation says:** *“Sow your seed in the morning, and at evening let not your hands be idle, for you do not know which will succeed, whether this or that, or whether both will do equally well”*.

**Eccl. 11:4 – N.I.V.** – *“Whoever watches the wind will not plant; whoever looks at the clouds will not reap”*

**Then Solomon adds:** Prov. 19:17 – *“He who has pity on the poor lends to the Lord.”*

#### **JEREMIAH TEACHES US SOMETHING VERY SPECIAL ABOUT SOWING AND REAPING:**

**Jer. 4:3** – *“For thus saith the Lord .....Break up your fallow ground, and sow not among thorns.”*

Watch where you are sowing!

I would definitely not sow on cement.

Do not sow on places where you know that the seed would have no chance to grow.

#### **IF YOU WANT PEACE – SOW PEACE!**

**James 3:18** – *“And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace of them that make peace”*

**The Living Bible translation says:** *“And those who are peacemakers will plant seeds of peace and reap a harvest of goodness”.*

**WOULD YOU LIKE TO BECOME A “BEAUTIFUL AGED” PERSON?**

Then you would have to plant the right seed **now**. Do not allow bitterness to take root in your life.

Try to make many friends with people – otherwise you will become lonely as an aged person!

**DO YOU WANT THINGS TO GO WELL WITH YOUR CHILDREN?**

Then you will have to sow the right things immediately!

Do well to other young people.

**HOW AND WHAT DO YOU SOW IN YOUR MARRIAGE?**

How do you speak to each other?

Men must always remember that if they do not respect their wives God will not answer their prayers according to 1 Peter 3:7

**REMEMBER:** A person gets older and not younger!

**PAUL, WHEN SPEAKING ABOUT RENDERING SERVICE TO FELLOW CHRISTIANS, SPEAKS ABOUT SOWING AND REAPING ON A DIFFERENT LEVEL ALTOGETHER:**

Read what God’s Word says in **2 Cor 9:6-11!**

**With this Scripture I want to put a key into your hands which will open financial doors.**

**PAUL WAS COLLECTING FOR THE POOR CHRISTIANS IN JUDEA.**

He started in Greece that had two regions, namely Macedonia and Achaia. Palestine was divided into three regions namely: Galilee, Samaria and Judea. Paul was gathering material things for the poor Christians in Jerusalem and surroundings. **(2 Corinthians 8)**

**IF YOU STUDY 2 Cor. 8 and 9 YOU WOULD FIND THE FOLLOWING:**

That Macedonia gave to the poor Christians of Judea while they themselves were very poor.

**THE LIVING BIBLE STATES IT VERY CLEARLY:**

**2 Cor. 8: 1,2** – *“Though they (Macedonia) have been going through much trouble and hard times, they have mixed their wonderful joy with their deep poverty, and the result has been an overflow of giving to others. (Vs 3a) They gave not only what they could afford but far more ...”.*

**PAUL ENCOURAGED THE CORINTHIANS TO GIVE THEIR BEST – SO THAT HE NEED NOT BE ASHAMED OF THEM. 2 COR 9:4.**

He had told them a year previously to collect funds for the Christians at Jerusalem. **2 Cor. 8:10; 1 Cor. 16:1-5.**

## **ONE OF THE GREAT LESSONS WE LEARN HERE IS: YOU MUST GIVE (YOU MUST SOW) EVEN IF YOU ARE GOING THROUGH DIFFICULT TIMES**

Have you just come through a time of tears?

My word to you is: **Psalm 126:5** – “They that sow in tears shall reap with joy!”

Isa 60:20 – “*Your sun shall no longer go down, nor shall your moon withdraw itself; for the Lord will be your everlasting light, and the days of your mourning shall be ended.*”

Maybe you say as so many others: “Oh, I just wish that I also could give, then I would gladly do so”.

Look what happened in **Mark 12:41,42** – “*And Jesus sat over against the treasury, and beheld how the people cast money into the treasury; and many that were rich cast in much. And there came a certain poor widow, and she threw in two mites, which make a farthing. And He called unto him his disciples, and saith unto them: Verily I say unto you, that this poor widow hath cast more in, than all they which have cast into the treasury..... for she cast in all that she had, even all her living.*”

What about the widow of Zarephath?

Note Elijah visiting the widow. See how he acted.

After she had taken what she had (a handful of flour and a small bit of oil) and given it to Elijah, we read what happened in the Bible:

**1 Kings 17:16** “*The bin of flour was not used up, nor did the jar of oil run dry*”.

### **GOD CAN MAKE MUCH FROM A LITTLE!**

### **ACCORDING TO 2 COR. 9, IF YOU SOW MONEY YOU WILL REAP MONEY!**

Never forget that God will give to you, so that you can give more and more.

**2 Cor. 9:8, 11 – (Living Bible)** – “*God is able to make it up to you by giving you everything you need and more, so that there will not only be enough for your own needs, but plenty left over to give joyfully to others. Yes, God will give you much so that you can give away much ...*”

Do not become like the Dead Sea. This sea receives water from the Jordan river and yet this sea is without life, because it does not flow out.

HOW MUST WE GIVE? **2 Cor. 9:7** – “*Let each one give as he purposes in his heart, not grudgingly or of necessity; for God loves a cheerful giver*”

The Amplified Bible translates this as follows: “*God loves (takes pleasure in) a cheerful, joyous giver – whose heart is in his giving.*”

**READ THE FOLLOWING CONCERNING GIVING:**

**Exodus 25:2; Deut. 16:7; 1 Chron. 29:9**

Test your own attitude in the light of the above Scripture, when you give.

**DO YOU EXPECT A HARVEST? WHAT HAVE YOU SOWN?**

# **PRAISE AND WORSHIP**

## **We start our study with Psalm 103:1-12**

### **Why must God be worshipped?**

1. Because He has forgiven our sins (**Verses 3,12**)  
Do you still thank God for this?
2. Because He heals us.  
Think of what God has done for you and your family.
3. Because He redeemed us from Hell (**v. 4**)  
Do you understand **Col. 1:13**? *“He has delivered us from the power of darkness and conveyed (transferred) us into the kingdom of the Son of His love.”* Do you realize what really happened?
4. Because it is only the Lord Who can satisfy our souls. (**vs. 5**)
5. **vs. 6. (Living Bible)** “He gives justice to all who are treated unfairly”
6. **vs. 8, 9 (Living Bible)** “ He is merciful and tender towards those who don’t deserve it. He is slow to get angry and full of kindness and love. **He never bears a grudge**, nor remains angry forever”  
**Is not this enough reason why we should continually praise and worship God?**

### **Turn to Psalm 150.**

This Psalm gives us the answers to four important questions:

1. Where must we praise God? **vs. 1**
2. Why must God be praised? **vs. 2** (“Exploring Worship, page 18)
3. With what must we praise God? **vs 3-5**  
With trumpets, guitar, piano, keyboard, drums etc.
4. Who must praise God? **vs. 6**  
Everyone that has breath
5. When must we praise God?  
All the time, even if we don’t feel like it (Ps.34:1)  
In the hard times (Hab. 3:17,18)  
Early in the morning (Ps. 57:8)  
At midnight (Ps. 116:62)

### **WORSHIP IS:**

- Conversation between God and man
- Worship is giving to God (also our total self)
- Worship provides the metabolism for spiritual life
- Worship is the highest point man can reach in response to the love of God
- Worship is the hearts expression of love, adoration and praise to God
- Worship is an act by a redeemed man (creator towards his Creator)
- Worship is awesome wonder and love in the presence of God
- Worship includes body, soul and mind
- Worship is the pouring out of our inner self to God
- Worship is God's Spirit in us contacting the Spirit in the Godhead
- Worship is the response of God's Spirit in us calling Him "Abba Father"
- Worship is normal attitude of creature related to God
- Worship is extravagant love and extreme obedience
- Worship must be with sincerity but also in truth
- Worship will transform you to the glory of God
- Worship is like the river in Ezek.47:9, wherever it flows everything grows
- Thanksgiving centres on man and what God has done for him. Praise centres on man's blessings. Worship centres on God Himself
- Thanksgiving and praise starts with the mouth and affects our hearts.

### **What about guilt?**

When the women in **Luke 7:36-50** worshipped she was forgiven.

- God does convict but never condemns
- Conviction leads to repentance
- Condemnation leads to despair
- Conviction motivates us towards God
- Condemnation leaves us powerless
- Guilt is among the greatest hindrances in our worship services

## THANKSGIVING:

No man can praise and worship God if he has no **thankfulness** in his heart towards God. **1 Thess 5:18** says: "In everything give thanks; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you."

**Eph 5:20** "*giving thanks always for all things to God the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.*" That is why the following people still could bring praise to God regardless of their circumstances:

Jonah in the fish. (**Jonah 2:9,10**)

Paul in prison. (**Acts 16:25,26**)

The prophet Habakkuk. (**Hab. 3:17,18**)

**Col. 2:7** says that we must be **overflowing with thankfulness** for all He has done

Here on earth we have to **learn** to be thankful, because heaven will be filled with thankfulness. (**Rev 7:9-12**)

### What do our praises mean to God?

"Praise means to speak of the excellence of God. To enhance and praise the qualities of God!"

The main reason for our existence is to worship God!

No ministry or function which we perform in His church should be more important than to worship God. This includes our preaching our teaching and whatever we should be involved in, in the church. If you cannot worship God what are you trying to prove ?

Many people go to church to take part in a ritual. **But God seeks true worshippers who will worship Him in Spirit and in Truth.**

**John 4:23,24** (Jesus said) "*The hour is coming and now is, when the true worshippers will worship the Father in spirit and truth; for the Father is seeking such to worship Him. God is Spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.*"

The word "**Worshipper**" means "**an intensive admirer**".

Is this a description of your life? (Be honest in your heart when you answer this)

John 4:24 (**Living Bible**) "Is our worship spiritual and real? Do we have the Holy Spirit's help? For God is Spirit, and we must have His help to worship as we should."

(N.I.V.) "God is Spirit, and His worshippers must worship Him in spirit and in truth".

It is quite evident that God is searching for such people. If someone is searching for something, then he has a need for that. Worship is when all that we are **reacts to all that He is**.

Worship is our **reaction to the presence of God**, as soon as we are aware of His presence.

## **THE SEVEN HEBREW WORDS FOR PRAISE**

In the Bible we find seven Hebrew words for **Praise**. Israel knew exactly what was expected from them when they heard or read the word **“Praise”**. **We understand worship in the way in which we were brought up to understand it.**

### **1. Hallal**

We find this word approximately 100 times in the Old Testament. One-third of these are found in the Psalms.

**Hallal** means: to laud, to extol, to boast of, to exalt, to celebrate, to commemorate, to be exuberantly silly.

The Word **Hallelujah** (and used in all Nations) is derived from **Hallal**.

The word has no linguistic boundary or language barrier and is pronounced in the same way in all languages.

**Hallelujah is the spontaneous exclamation of a person who is excited about God!**

### **2. Yadah** (“Exploring Worship” page 15,16)

**“To worship God with outstretched hands”** Have you ever done this?

#### **Why do we lift up our hands?**

- When someone gives over, he lifts his hands!
- When someone wins, he also puts up his hands. (Think of a boxing-match)  
We are more than conquerors and we have reason to lift up our hands to God who gave us the victory!
- **Read Neh. 8:5,6**  
*“And Ezra opened the book (the law) in the sight of all the people, for he was standing above all the people (v.4 a pulpit) and when he opened it, the people stood up (this was in respect for God’s Word) And Ezra blessed the Lord, the great God. Then all the people answered, ‘Amen, Amen!’ while lifting up their hands (this is “Yadah”) And bowed their heads and worshipped the Lord with their faces to the ground.”*



### 3. Todah

***“Uplifted hands in admiration”***

What does the Bible say about uplifted hands?

**Psalm 63:4** – “Thus will I bless Thee while I live: I will lift up my hands in Thy name”

**Psalm 134:2** – “Lift up your hands in the sanctuary, and bless the Lord”

**Psalm 141:2** – “Let my prayer be set forth before Thee as incense; and the lifting up of my hands as the evening sacrifice.”

### 4. Barak

**“To declare God as the source of all things”**

One of the most striking portions of Scripture is mentioned where **“Barak” sacrifices of praise** were brought to God.

We read about this in **1 Chron 29**.

A **“Barak”** sacrifice of praise usually involves my possessions.

**Take Note:**

You cannot bring praise to God with empty hands.

Let us look at what **1 Chron 29** says:

- **(N.I.V. Bible)** The heading: **“Gifts for building the temple”**. **vs. 1.**
- **vs. 3.** – Do you find pleasure in the house of the Lord?
- **vs. 4.** – Look at the example David gave! One Bible translation says that he gave “one hundred and three tons of gold, gold from Ophir, two hundred and forty tons of purest silver”  
**The living Bible says** that David gave 85 Million Dollars of gold and 145 Million Dollars of silver.
- The leaders gave 171 tons of gold and 342 tons of silver. **(V. 6,7)**  
No leaders can lead God’s people if he/she is not prepared to set the example by giving to God’s work.

Let that which you give unto God be from deep within your heart!

### 5. Tehilla

***“To praise God in song”*** (*Singing unto the Lord is “Tehilla” unto God*)

**Psalm 22:3** – “But Thou art holy, O Thou that inhabits the praise (the “tehillah”) of Israel.” That is why we as Christians love to sing.

Israel had 4000 full-time singers.

**1 Chron 23:3-5.** The singers built their villages around Jerusalem so that they could be near the Temple **Neh 12:28,29** *“And the sons of the singers gathered from the countryside around Jerusalem.....for the singers had built themselves villages all around Jerusalem.”*

We have seen new Christians in the past that came to a town; the first thing they did was to get themselves a house near the church. Not near their work but near their church.

**Psalm 100:4** – “ Enter (*it is not so much God coming into our presence as it is us going into His presence*) into His gates with thanksgiving (**todah** – outstretched hands), and into His courts with praise (**tehilla** – with song) Be thankful unto him (**yadah** – lifting up of hands) and bless His name (**barak** – praise Him with something tangible, because He is the source of all things)

**Do you understand this Psalm better?**

## 6. Zamar

**“To praise God on stringed instruments”.**

In other words: to express our joy through music. But always remember that music should have **melody** and **harmony**

Practice hours per day and listen to good tapes and CD's to help you be more excellent in giving praise unto God.

The following instruments were used to praise God:

**Trumpets:(Num 10:10; In 2 Chron 5:12-14)**

**Cymbals; Harps; Timbrels/Tambourines; Cornets; Pipes; Flutes, etc.**

We read of 120 ministers who praised God with trumpets. (2 Chron. 5)

- The Bible refers to “Loud instruments”  
**2 Chron 30:21** *“and the Levites and the priests praised the Lord day by day, singing to the Lord, accompanied by loud instruments.”*
- **2 Chron 34:12** speaks of those who were skillful in the instruments of music. *“And the men did the work faithfully..... Others of the Levites, all of whom were skilful with instruments of music.”*  
We should never settle with the second best in the church. Each one playing an instrument for the Lord should practice until they are skilful enough to do it.
- **1 Chron 25:6,7** – speaks about 288 who were trained and skilled in music for the Lord. *“All these were under the direction of their father for the music in the house of the Lord, with cymbals, stringed instruments, and harps, .....So the number of them, with their brethren who were instructed in the songs of the Lord, all who were skilful, was **two hundred and eighty-eight.**”*

## 7. Shabach

### ***“A loud shout”***

Israel knew that when they were asked to give a “Shabach Praise” to God that it meant that they should lift up their voices and not keep back.

It is quite clear that we should bring praise to God with an **audible voice**.

There is enough scripture telling us that we should not keep inside of us the praise we should give to God. Let us look at some of these scriptures.

**Heb 13:15** – “By Him, therefore, let us continually offer to God a sacrifice of praise – that is the fruit of our lips giving thanks to His name.”

**Psalm 34:1** – “I will bless the Lord at all times; His praise shall continually be in my mouth”

**Psalm 126:2** – “Then was our mouth filled with laughter, and our tongue with singing.”

**Rom 10:9,10 – v. 10** – “For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.”

### ***There is mighty power in “Shabach Praise!”***

One of the best examples in the Bible is where Israel gave a “*Shabach Praise*” to God when they walked around the big and strong walls of Jericho

**We read in the following report what happened:**

**Josh 6:20** “So the people shouted (the word “Shabach” is used here) when the priests blew the trumpets. And it happened when the people heard the sound of the trumpet, and the people shouted with a great shout, that the wall fell down flat,

I was there at the ruins of Jericho. The walls did not fall to the one side or to other side, they just sank into the ground. So that Israel could walk right into the city.

Then the people went up into the city, every man straight before him, (they did not have to climb over the fallen bricks and rocks) and the took the city.”

**Against which walls do you need to “Shabach’ in your life?**

## THE TABERNACLE and WORSHIP

To help Israel to understand how they should worship God, He inspired Moses to build the Tabernacle in the wilderness.

Today we can also learn from the Tabernacle to know what worship unto God is all about. A wonderful scripture is found in the book of Hebrews, chapter nine.

**Heb. 9:1** (NIV) – “Now the first covenant (the Old Testament) had regulations (rules) for worship, and also an earthly sanctuary.” (There were certain rules laid down for the place of worship)

**Amplified:** “Now even the first covenant had its own rules and regulations for divine worship”

**Living Bible:** “Now in the first agreement between God and His people (*this refers to the Old Testament*) there were rules for worship and there was a sacred tent down here on earth.”

### THERE IS MUCH WE CAN LEARN THROUGH THE TABERNACLE ON HOW WE SHOULD WORSHIP.

#### **1. Just as the Tabernacle in the Old Testament was a dwelling-place (residence) for God – so also are we as believers, the residence or dwelling-place of the Holy Spirit!**

The Tabernacle consisted of three parts:

- The Outer Court
- The Holy Place
- The Holiest of All or Most Holy Place

Man also consists of three parts:

- Body
- Soul
- Spirit

**The Body:** represents the Outer Court. This is the area which can be seen by everyone.

**The Soul:** Represents the Holy Place  
- where we find bread for our soul  
- where the candle gives us light and direction  
- where the altar of incense is (prayer)

**The Spirit:** representing the Holiest of All  
- Where we experience intimate communion with God.

#### **2. Seen from the outside, the Tabernacle was not an imposing building, but inside was the glory of God.**

Inside was fine linen, but the outside was covered with badgers' skins.

It is truly only God's glory in our lives that transforms our lives into something beautiful inside.

### 3. The Tabernacle was a portrayal of what already existed in Heaven.

**Heb. 9:23 (Living Bible)** "The sacred tent down here on earth and everything in it – all copied from things in heaven ..."

**Heb 8:5** – "Their work is connected with a mere earthly model of the real tabernacle in heaven ..."

Also read Ex. 25:9. *"According to all that I show you, that is, the pattern of the Tabernacle and the pattern of all its furnishings, just so you shall make it."*

God repeated these words four times to Moses to ensure that he would build the Tabernacle exactly as God had commanded him.

**You and I (as God's Tabernacles) have been made precisely according to the heavenly.**

### 4. Our goal in our worship is to get to God's glory.

**Consider the following:**

- There is just **one entrance** to God's and that is Jesus Christ.  
**John 14:6,13,14** *"I am the way, the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. And whatever you ask in My Name, that I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If you ask anything in My Name, I will do it."*
- HAVE YOU BEEN TO THE **brazen Altar**? This is where we get washed
- You will have to eat of the **showbread** (that is the Word) John 6:35
- Your walk will have to be in the sevenfold light of the **golden candlestick**
- Before you can enter the Holiest of All, what does your **Altar of Incense** look like? (This refers to your prayer life)

**In Heb. 9:2-5 we are told how the Tabernacle should be arranged so as to give Israel direction in their worship.**

Let us see what the Lord wants to teach us in this connection:

#### 1. **The Candlestick** (with 7 lamps which burned day and night)

In **John 12:46** the Lord tells us that if we follow Him we shall never need to walk in darkness. **Light speaks of truth and uprightness!**

#### 2. **The Showbread** (there were 12 loaves of unleavened bread – one loaf for each tribe and each week fresh bread was baked!)

You will not be in a condition to worship God if you **do not regularly eat of the Bread of Life**. (having fellowship with Jesus and reading His Word)

3. **Golden Incense** (What fragrance do you spread?)

This is our **prayers** to God.

How can you **Worship** God if you do not **Pray**?

If people hear how you **Pray**, they will know how you **Worship**.

You will know when you enter a home if they pray.

4. **The Ark of Covenant**

According to **Lev. 16:2**, God's Glory rested on the mercy seat of the Ark

Our **Worship** should take us to God's ark, where His Glory is found. Have you been there?

**I want to take you back to Heb. 9:2 – for the Tabernacle was arranged as given by God.**

We are God's Tabernacles! **2 Cor. 6:16** – “For ye are the Temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them ...”

**If you have not yet become a worshipper, listen to the following:**

God is seeking true worshippers.

**John 4:23, 24** – Please commit yourself.

**One thing you must always remember and that is:**

THE VEIL HAS BEEN RENT FROM THE TOP TO THE BOTTOM  
FROM GOD'S SIDE RIGHT DOWN TO US!

Did you know what Israel did? They continued to patch the veil for 40 years after it was rent to enable them to continue in their old way of service in the Temple.

**God must help us not to go back to the old way of worship!**

May we never return to the old legalistic religion.

Read until you understand **Heb 10:19-25**.

LET US COME INTO HIS PRESENCE WITH BOLDNESS!!

**WE HAVE A SONG OF PRAISE!**

**Hab 3:17-19**. This was Habakkuk's prayer.

**What does Habakkuk mean when he says “YET?” (Hab 3:18).**

What he is saying is: “In spite of all disappointments, I will still praise the Lord!” (Nothing whatever will hinder him from praising the Lord)

- Read **Hab 1:1,2**

Here Habakkuk is asking God why He does not punish Judah.

- God gives him a prophetic word in **Hab 2:2**.

## 1. The condition of our land.

- The value of our money has declined
- The violence and crime is extremely high
- There are untold dry bones in God's church
- There is exceptional pressure on families today

## 2. But thank God we have a Song of Praise.

Together with Paul in **Rom. 11:33-36** we can exclaim: (Living Bible) "Oh, what a wonderful God we have. How great are his wisdom and knowledge and riches. How impossible it is for us to understand his decisions and his methods.

For who among us can know the mind of the Lord? WHO KNOWS ENOUGH TO BE HIS COUNSELOR AND GUIDE? And who could ever offer to the Lord enough to induce him to act? For everything comes from God alone. Everything lives by his power, and everything is for his glory: To him be glory for evermore."

### **Israel had a Song of Praise after they went through the Red Sea! (We read this song in Ex. 15)**

How old was Miriam at that time? (She was 92 years of age and still could dance before the Lord) Moses was 80 years old when Israel left Egypt. Miriam was 12 years older than Moses.

### **Israel sang a Song of Praise at the Passover.**

It is recorded in **Psalms 113:1,3** – "Praise ye the Lord! Praise, O ye servants of the Lord, praise the name of the Lord!"

The Living Bible says: "Hallelujah from the rising of the sun unto the going down of the same, the Lord's Name is to be praised"

This is what Jesus and His disciples sang when they instituted the communion. **Mark 14:26**

### **David also had a Song of Praise.**

**2 Sam 6** – David was dancing when he brought the Ark of the Covenant back to Jerusalem.

**v. 14** – "And David danced before the **Lord with all his might**; and David was girded with a linen ephod!"

**To dance "with all your might" how do you understand this?**

Let us sing with joy the old chorus that said:

*"He lifted me up from a deep miry clay  
He planted my feet on the King's Highway  
And this is the reason I sing and I shout;  
For Jesus came down and He lifted me up"*

### **There are many ways of worshipping God.**

- Singing
- Praise – rejoicing
- By telling others of your thankfulness toward God

## WHAT WILL HAPPEN WHEN WE PRAISE THE LORD?

1. The Lord will add to the church those whom He saves. **Acts 2:42-47**
  - 3 000 on the Day of Pentecost. And a few days later 5 000 (**Acts 4:4**)
  - **Listen:** True Praise and Worship will not chase people away, but it will draw them to our churches.
2. God's Glory will fill the Church **2 Chron. 5:13,14.** (Read this)
3. Your problems will be solved. This is what God did for Jonah. **Jonah 2:1-10**
4. Our enemies will be conquered **2 Chron. 20** (please study this chapter)

When Paul and Silas worshiped God in jail, their jail doors were unlocked by God. God even opened all the jail doors of all the prisoners at the same time. We read of this in Acts 16.

The bible says in Act 16:26 "All the doors were opened and every one's chains were loosed"

**The Living Bible says:** "All the doors flew open – the jailor wakened to see the prison doors wide open. (Your friends and family will also be set free when you begin praising and worshipping God!)

After this we read that the **Officers** ordered the jailer to let Paul and Silas go free. **Acts 16:35-40**

**THOSE WHO PRAISE THE LORD ARE IN CONTROL!**

**CAN THE OPPOSITE HAPPEN WHEN WE DO NOT PRAISE THE LORD?**

**Oh, yes. Read Deut. 28:47,48**

**GOD GIVES THE LAND TO THOSE WHO PRAISE AND WORSHIP HIM!**

**Judges 1:1-2** "After the death of Joshua, the Israelites asked the Lord, "Who will be the first to go up and fight for us against the Canaanites?" The Lord answered, **Judah** is to go; I have given the Land into their hands"

The word "**Judah**" means: Praise

The tribe of Judah comes from Jacob and Leah.

We read this in **Gen 29:35** "And she conceived again, and bare a son; and she said, now I will praise the Lord: therefore she called his name 'Judah' ...."

1. In **Num. 2** we learn that Judah's camp was right in front of the entrance to the Tabernacle, on the East side, toward the rising of the sun.

True worshippers always live near to God and in His sun.  
True worshippers never live in darkness.

2. The promises in Gen. 49:8-10 are for those who worship their God.



3. **Caleb praised the Lord** – even at the age of 85 years. **Josh 14:10-12**

Caleb came from of the tribe of **Judah. (Num 13:6)**  
He drove the Anakites out of Hebron **(Judges 1:20)**

Judah also had a strong army. In **Joshua 15** we read of all the places which they conquered.

If you say you are a real worshipper, you must always be ready to do spiritual warfare.

**Which “land” must you conquer?**

There is only one way to conquer “your land” and that is by **bringing praise and honour to God!**

1. Have your children strayed away from God?  
**Jer. 31:16** This is what the Lord said: **“Restrain your voice from weeping and your eyes from tears, for your work will be rewarded”**, declares the Lord. **“They will return from the land of the enemy .....**”  
Confess this Scripture, believing the Lord in your heart and praising Him for His promise.
2. Has the enemy robbed you of finances? Praise to God will change your circumstances.
3. What about your health?  
Confess **1 Pet. 2:24** – **“He himself bore our sins in His body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness; BY HIS WOUNDS YOU HAVE BEEN HEALED.”**  
**Psalm 103:1,3** – **“Praise the Lord, O my soul; all my inmost being, praise his holy name. He forgives all my sins and HEALS ALL MY DISEASES”**
4. Have you lost your anointing?  
Believe as the Scripture says so that the waters **IN** you can bubble up: **John 7 v. 38** **“Whoever believes in me, as the Scripture has said, streams of living water will flow from within him” (NIV)**

**DISCOVER THE VALLUE OF WORSHIPPING THE LORD IN SPIRIT AND IN TRUTH AND YOU WILL EXPERIENCE A BREAKTHROUGH AS NEVER BEFORE!**

**RECOMMENDED TEXTBOOK**

***“Exploring Worship”***

***By: Bob Sorge***

***Oasis House,***

***P.O. Box 63,***

***Lee’s Summit.***

***Missouri. 64063-0063***

# **PRAYER and INTERCESSION**

## **What is the definition of Prayer?**

Prayer is to have a conversation with God.

Therefore it is not a monologue (only one person doing the talking) but a dialogue (communication between people) I speak to God and then listen to Him speaking to me through His Word and through His Spirit in my heart.

## **How should we pray?**

- In the Name of Jesus.      **John 16:24    John 14:6**
- Don't use vain repetition of words.      **Matt. 6:7**
- The "Our Father" is a good example how to pray.      **Matt. 6:9-13**
- We must pray without ceasing.      **1 Thess. 5:17**
- We must pray with persistence.      **Luke 18:1-8**

## **Thank God for the Power in Prayer!**

The first Church experienced the power in prayer. **Acts 4:31**

*"And when they had prayed the place where they were assembled together was shaken; and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and they spoke the word of God with boldness."*

Seven things happened because they prayed:

- The place was shaken (verse 31)
- All were filled with the Spirit (verse 31)
- They became bold (verse 31)
- They became one in heart and soul (verse 32)
- They even shared their possessions (verse 32)
- The wrong things among them was revealed (Acts 5 Ananias & Sapphira)
- Signs and wonders took place (Acts 5:12-16)

## **Thank God for the Power in agreement**

**In Matt. 18:19 Jesus said:** *"I say to you that if two of you agree on earth concerning anything that they ask, it will be done for them by My Father in heaven."*

Find someone that can agree with you in prayer, and you will experience great answers in your prayers!

## **What can we pray for?**

- |                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. For souls to be saved    | <b>Romans 10:1    1 Tim. 2:3,4</b> |
| 2. For our Leaders          | <b>1 Tim. 2:1,2</b>                |
| 3. For Revival              | <b>2 Chron. 7:14    Psalm 85:6</b> |
| 4. For the birth of a child | <b>1 Sam. 1:27    Luke 1:13</b>    |
| 5. For healing              | <b>2 Kings 20    James 5:14</b>    |

# **INTERCESSION**

## **What is an Intercessor?**

It is someone that stands between God and man in prayer.

An intercessor prays on behalf of others.

All Christians should be Intercessors according to **1 Tim. 2:1-8**

When the Church prayed for Peter in prison, God delivered him

**(Acts 12)**

## **An Intercessor:**

- Can stop God's Judgment      **Gen. 18:20-32 Num. 16:1-50**
- Do not seek his/her own interest      **Ex. 32:9-14 Num. 12:1-15**
- Will change be blessed when praying for others      **Job 42:10**

## **DEFINITIONS for "INTERCESSION"**

"Intercede" (Latin: intercedo) "inter" = between and "cedo" = to pass between

To act between parties with a view to reconcile those who differ

"mediate" = to negotiate between persons to reconcile

"advocate" = "called to one's side to aide"

IT ALL COMES TO THIS: "AN INTERCESSOR IS ONE WHO MEDIATES AND INTERCEDES AS AN ADVOCATE"

## **MAN'S TWO-FOLD NEED**

A Mediator/Intercessor to reconcile. Man was made to be the "Door Keeper" between heaven and earth

- (1) A Mediator/ Intercessor TO RECONCILE  
Scriptures to study: **Job.9:13-35;**  
**Job 16:21; Job.23:3,4; Isa.59:16**

Man's need was for a mediator, an advocate or intercessor that could stand between him and God, bridging the gap, pleading his case and to bring reconciliation

- (2) A Mediator/Intercessor TO BREAK SATAN'S HEAD  
Scriptures to study: **Gen.3:15; Ps.110:6,7; Luke 4:6; 1 John3:8**

Man's need was for a mediator or intercessor to go between him and satan, breaking his headship, his authority, and his dominion over man and planet earth

## **WE MUST ESTABLISH IN OUR THINKING THAT JESUS IS THE INTERCESSOR and MEDIATOR BETWEEN GOD AND MAN!**

SCRIPTURES:    **Heb.12:18-24**  
                      **John 14:6**  
                      **Rom.8:34**  
                      **1 Tim.2:5**  
                      **Heb.7:25:20-25**  
                      **1 John 2:1**

When we hear the word “INTERCESSION” we only think of prayer, but it’s much more than that

- Jesus’ Intercession is not a petitioning of the Father for us. IT IS AN ACT!
- Jesus is not praying in our place  
We can still come boldly to the throne of God, because Jesus is the link between us and the Father.
- Our prayers of Intercession are based on His act of Intercession
- The Believer and the Church release His act of Intercession in the earth!
- He is the Manufacturer. He generates! Nothing originates with us!
- We are the Ambassadors! We operate from a work that’s already done.
- We don’t talk God into anything. The provision has been made.

Jesus became forever man’s link to God and God’s link to man. He is the intercessor, the mediator between God and man. “And he stood between the dead and the living; so that the plague was stopped” (Num.16:48)

MAN’S ORIGINAL AUTHORITY OVER THE EARTH CAME THROUGH THE MAN ADAM. Man’s PRESENT AUTHORITY ON EARTH COMES THROUGH THE GOD-MAN, JESUS, THE LAST ADAM. HE BROKE SATAN’S HEADSHIP AND LIBERATED HUMANITY. ALL RULE OR AUTHORITY ON THE EARTH, ON THE PART OF MAN, MUST GO THROUGH CHRIST!

### **THE PATTERN RESTORED**

Christ now mediates and involves Himself on the earth through His Body, the Church, which restores God’s plan back to His original intent; God through man.

### **What is REPRESENTATION?**

**Mark 16:15-20; Matt.16:19; Eph 3:10,20**

JESUS REALLY NEEDS ME! BUT I NEED HIM TO GET TO GOD! HE NEEDS ME TO GET TO MAN! He represents me in heaven and I represent Him on earth.

### **CHECK YOURSELF**

- Give, in your own words, a definition of intercession
- Describe man’s situation relating it to his two-fold need for an intercessor

- Give a brief explanation of how Jesus met this need. Can you back this up with scripture?
- **Rom.8:34 and Heb.7:25** state that Christ is now in heaven making intercession for us. Explain what this does and does not mean.
- Explain how Christ has restored things back to God's original plan for man.

### **REPRESENTING JESUS**

The pattern for our representation of Jesus is exactly the same as His when He represented the Father on earth. We relate to Him in exactly the same way He related to the Father. An understanding of this pattern is crucial, for our intercession is but an extension of the life and ministry of Jesus, as His was of the Father. Herein lies the secret to all successful New Testament ministry, including, of course, intercession.

#### **1. CHRIST HAD AUTHORITY BECAUSE HE WAS SENT**

To represent someone you must have authority

Authority is THE RIGHT TO RULE!

Greek word is "exousia" (the right to rule)

This has nothing to do with emotion and volume ! Authority says who SENT you and who you REPRESENT.

Authority is not the emphasis, the source is. Jesus was sent by the Father (**John 3:17; John 4:34; John 5:23**)

FORTY TIMES IN JOHN'S GOSPEL WE READ THIS. YOU HAVE TO KNOW THAT YOU WERE SENT BY GOD.

#### **2. JESUS DID THE "WILL" OF THE FATHER**

**(John 4:34; John 5:30; John 6:38; 1 Cor.11:3)**

JESUS DID THE "WORKS" OF THE FATHER (**John 14:10**)

#### **3. JESUS "REVEALED" THE FATHER**

**(John 1:18; John 14:9; John 17:6; John 17:6; 2 Cor.4:4; Heb.1:3)**

The Father intervened in the affairs of the world through Jesus. In everything Christ did on earth, He was representing the Father and was an extension of His love, His will and His works. In this was found the key to His authority.

### **CHRIST AND THE HOLY SPIRIT.**

(1) Jesus was FILLED with the Holy Spirit (**Luke 4:1**)

(2) Jesus was LED by the Holy Spirit (**Luke 4:1**)

(3) Jesus was EMPOWERED by the Holy Spirit

**(Luke 4:14; Acts 10:38; Mark 5:30; Matt.12:28)**

(4) Jesus was ANOINTED by the Holy Spirit (**Luke 4:18; Acts 10:38**)

Jesus relied on the power and anointing of the Holy Spirit.

Through His relationship with the Father, He ascertained the will of God in a situation. Then, combining the authority to rule with the power to rule, He demonstrated and forced the will of God on earth.

This was INTERCESSION!

**THE HOLY SPIRIT WANTS TO HELP US IN OUR PRAYER LIFE**

**Romans 8:26** *“Likewise the Spirit also helps in our weaknesses. For we do not know what we should pray for as we ought, but the Spirit Himself makes intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.”*

He wants to give us direction and accuracy in our prayers.

The word “weaknesses” or “infirmities” comes from the Greek word “asthenia” meaning “without strength”

The word “Groaning” (stegnagmos) meaning is “one who is distressed”  
In different translations we read these words:

<b>KJV</b>	<b>“Which cannot be uttered”</b>
<b>W.E. Vine</b>	<b>“Which are inexpressible”</b>
<b>Bullinger</b>	<b>“Not to be expressed in words”</b>
<b>NAS</b>	<b>“Too deep for words”</b>
<b>Beck</b>	<b>“Yearnings that you can’t find words”</b>
<b>NIV</b>	<b>“Groanings which cannot be uttered”</b>

Don’t make what’s happening in the physical the focal point; the emphasis must always be on what the Holy Spirit is doing. In the spirit we are birthing something. This is our focus!

Travailing: Isa.66:8; Gal.4:19;

**Elijah travailed and rain came** (James 6:16-18)

**In 1 Kings 18 we read how Elijah travailed for the rain. (his position v.42) and he persisted (v.43)**

**Jesus also prevailed in Gethsemane for the lost world!**

**THE DEVIL AND DEMON POWERS ARE ALREADY DEFEATED!**

Why do we then have to “wrestle” against the enemy? **Eph.6:12**

In **Col. 2:15** we read “Having disarmed principalities and powers, He made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them in it.”

We should never get into a defensive position! An attitude of offensive action will cause us to operate from a place of strength.

**Heb.2:14** “destroy” (katargeo) “to render inactive, to spoil, make useless, make without effect”

**1 John 3:8** “destroy” (luo) “to loose, loosen, dissolve, break, demolish”

**Matt.16:18,19; 18:18** We have the authority not to allow the devil to do something. **Col.1:13; Luke 10:19**

Technically speaking, Jesus didn’t destroy satan’s power. Satan still has power, but he has no legal right (authority) to use it on those who make Jesus their Lord.

**Recommended Textbooks:**

**“Intercessory Prayer” by: Dutch Sheets. Regal, Ventura. California. U.S.A.**

**“Prayer that moves mountain” by: Gordon Lindsay.  
CFN Inc. P.O. Box 76999. Dallas. Texas 75376-9000**

# **SPIRITUAL WARFARE**

**We are involved in spiritual warfare!**

**Ephesians 6: 11 to 12:** "Put on the full armour of God so that you can take your stand against the **devil's schemes**. For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms. "

The Greek word use in this text as "schemes" (metodeia) meaning "methods of the devil"

Thank God we are not ignorant of the plans and methods of the devil. In 2 Corinthians 2: 11 Paul says "in order that Satan might not outwit us. For we are not unaware of his schemes"

**EPHESIANS IS A WONDERFUL BOOK:**

**Chapters 1 to 3 tell us what our position is in Christ.**

- \* God has blessed us with every spiritual blessing (Eph.1:3)
- \* He gave us forgiveness of our sin (Eph.1:7)
- \* In Him we have obtained an inheritance (Eph.1:11)
- \* In Him we were sealed with the Holy Spirit (Eph.1:13)
- \* Everything that has a name is put under our feet (Eph.1:20-23)
- \* Jesus made us alive who were dead in sin (Eph.2:1)
- \* For us He is able to do exceedingly abundantly above all that we ask or think (Eph.3:20)

**Chapters 4 and 5 reading up to chapter 6 tells us how we should WALK in Christ.**

One example is found in Ephesians 4: 1, 17 "walk worthy of the calling with which you were called.....you should no longer **walk** as the rest of the gentiles **walk**, in the futility of their mind."

Building on the foundation of the truths above I must take my stand against the devil with the full armour of God! Because I am involved in a spiritual warfare.

Ephesians 6: 10 to 20 **"Put on the whole armour of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil" (verse 11)**

**Remember one thing:** Our fight is not against flesh and blood.

The problem is not your husband, wife, employer, neighbour, church or minister, but the devil. While we're fighting against our fellow believers the devil watches and laughs. When people disappoint you, or hurt you, you must firstly realise that the battle is "in the air" and not in the flesh.

The battle must first be won in prayer before you confront the person.

## IDENTIFY YOUR ENEMY

- The devil is the father of lies. **John 8:44** *“When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and a father of it.”*
- The devil is a thief. **John 10: 10** *“The thief (the devil) does not come except to steal, and to kill, and to destroy “*  
He steals our health; character and joy in the Lord.
- The devil comes as an angel of light. **2 Corinthians 11: 14** *“For satan himself transforms himself into an angel of light.”*
- The devil is an opponent. **1 Peter 5: 8** *“Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary (someone you are fighting with) the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.”*  
In **1 Thessalonians 2: 18** we read: *“Therefore we wanted to come to you — even I, Paul, time and again — but satan hindered us.”*
- The devil is a tempter. **1 Thessalonians 3: 5** (Paul writes to the church) *“For this reason, when I could no longer endure it, I sent to know your faith, lest by some means **the tempter** had tempted you, and our labour might be in vain.”*
- The devil is a deceiver. **2 Corinthians 11: 3** *“But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.”*
- The devil is called the God of this world.  
We read in **2 Corinthians 4:4** these words: *“But even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them.”*
- The devil is an accuser.  
He accuses us before God -- **Job 1: 6 to 12;**  
**Job 2: 1 to 5;**  
**Revelations 12: 9 to 10**  
(**verse 10:** “the accuser of our brethren, who accused them before our God day and night.”)

### QUESTION: WHERE DID THE DEVIL COME FROM ?

He was a beautiful angel by the name of Lucifer that wanted to exalt himself above God, and was expelled from heaven by God

**Isaiah 14: 11 to 15; Ezekiel 28: 12 to 19; Revelations 12: 3 to 9**



## **THANK GOD FOR THE FOLLOWING**

1. Demons are hateful and jealous of one another -- this is to our advantage.
2. The devil is not present everywhere all at once

The devil cannot kill as he pleases. When Jesus rose from the grave he took Satan's power away from him. **(Ephesians 4: 8 to 10; Colossians 2: 13 to 15; Matthew 22: 18)**

Therefore Jesus could call out in Revelations 1: 17, 18 : "Do not be afraid. I am the First and the Last. I am the Living One; I was dead, and behold I am alive for ever and ever. And I hold the keys of death and Hades." **Jesus will never give his keys to the devil**

**THE WORLD DOES NOT CONSIST ONLY OF THOSE THINGS THAT YOU CAN SEE WITH YOUR EYES AND TOUCH WITH YOUR HANDS.**

**WE ARE SURROUNDED BY AN INVISIBLE WORLD**

The air is full of TV and radio programmes --  
With the right type of equipment, you can see them and hear them.

Have you ever looked through a microscope at the water that you drink –  
What do you see?

**Angels are around us! There are a tremendous number of them.**

**Daniel 7: 10** *"A thousand ministered to Him; Ten thousand times ten thousand stood before Him."*

During Jesus' arrest in Gethsemane when Peter defended Jesus from the soldiers, He said: *"do you think that I cannot now pray to My Father, and He will provide Me with more than twelve legions of angels?"*  
(One legion is 6000) **Matthew 26:53**

At the birth of Jesus we read these words in **Luke 2:13,14** *"And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God and saying: 'Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, goodwill toward men.'"*

**From your birth until now an angel has been next to you.**

**Matthew 18: 10** "See that you do not look down on one of these little ones. For I tell you that their angels in heaven always see the face of my Father in heaven."

## **God's angels will help us in our Spiritual Warfare.**

**2 Kings 6: 17** "And Elisha prayed, "O LORD, open his eyes so that he may see." Then the LORD opened the servant's eyes, and he looked and saw the hills full of horses and chariots of fire all round Elisha."

Michael is the head of the angelic armies.

**Daniel 10: 12, 13; Daniel 12: 11; Jude v. 9**

## **DID YOU KNOW THAT DEMONIC POWERS ARE SET OVER TOWNS AND CITIES?**

**Read Daniel 10: 10 to 21** and you will find in verse 12 and 13 the angel Gabriel tells Daniel that his prayer was heard 21 days previously, but the demonic power appointed by satan over the kingdom of Persia had opposed him! Michael, the chief angel, helped Gabriel to get the message through to Daniel.

Gabriel said that he would have to fight against the Prince of Persia again. After that he would have to fight against the Prince of Greece. **verse 20**

### **It seems as though satan ruled over Tyre as well**

**Ezekiel 28: 1 to 19;** This Scripture portion and **Isaiah 14: 11 to 15** are clear descriptions of satan who wanted to exalt himself above God and who was expelled from heaven.

**Revelations 12: 7 to 9** "And war broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels fought with the dragon; and the dragon (the devil) and his angels fought, but they did not prevail, nor was a place found for them in heaven any longer. So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the devil and satan, who deceives the whole earth, and his angels were cast out with him. "

## **WHY DO WE NOT WIN SOME OF OUR SPIRITUAL BATTLES?**

Because there is hidden sin in our lives.

The devil laughs at us when we want to fight against him with sin in our lives! If we want to be victorious we must live clean lives before our God.

## **OUR BATTLE IS AGAINST "EVIL SPIRITS" AND NOT PEOPLE**

## **SOME SICKNESS IS CAUSED BY “EVIL SPIRITS”**

Not every sickness is caused by “evil spirits”

But we read in **Luke 13: 10 to 17**

“Now He was teaching in one of the synagogues on the Sabbath. And behold, there was a woman who had a **spirit of infirmity** (sickness) eighteen years and was bent over and could in no way raise herself up. But when Jesus saw her, He called her to Him and said to her, ‘Woman, you are loosed from your infirmity’ And He laid His hands on her, and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God.”

The ruler of the synagogue was upset because this took place on the Sabbath. But in verses 15 and 16 we read:

“The Lord then answered him and said, ‘Hypocrite! Does not each one of you on the Sabbath lose his ox or donkey from the stall, and lead it away to water it? So, ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan has bound — think of it — for eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the Sabbath?’”

How often we treat our bodies when it's our spirit that needs healing ?

### **Other translations of this story in Luke 13:**

#### **The Living Bible Translation:**

“... He saw a woman who had been crippled by an evil spirit. She had been bent double for 18 years and was unable to stand up straight.”

#### **The Amplified Bible:**

"And there was a woman there who for 18 years had had an infirmity caused by a spirit (a demon of sickness). She was bent completely forward and utterly unable to straighten herself or to look upward".

It is striking to see that this woman was in the church for all those years and still bound.

There are many these days in the church, yes amongst us, and yet they are still bound? Let us set them free in Jesus name!

## **FEAR CAN BE A SPIRIT**

2 Timothy 1: 7 "**For God did not give us a spirit of fear, but a spirit of power, of love and of self-discipline.**"

### **How do we overcome fear? Through love!**

Thank God for **1 John 4: 18**: "There is no fear in love. But perfect love drives out fear, because fear has to do with punishment. The one who fears is not made perfect in love."

## **LYING IS A SPIRIT.**

**1 Kings 22: 19 to 23** -- A lying spirit is mentioned six times in the Bible. Are you surprised that people believe in lies nowadays? (2 Thes. 2:9-12)

**John 8:44** "You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father's desire. He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth, for there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies."

### **IMPURITY IS A SPIRIT.**

In **Luke 4: 33 to 35** we read of a man in the synagogue that had **“a spirit of an unclean demon”**

According to me all demons are unclean. However, the reason why we refer to this spirit as an unclean spirit is because it was perverse.

This man was also in the church just like the woman in Luke 13 and what shocks me is that nobody helped him. Today this is the same in the church. People come to church with impurity, and we don't help them to get free!

### **Marriages**

The devil is against marriage because God instituted it. There are so many divorces and so much "free love" these days. (living together)

**Lesbianism and homosexuality** increase everyday.

The first is women having sex with each other and the second is men doing it.

No wonder God's judgment has struck mankind so heavily through AIDS. AIDS stands for "Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome" It destroys the immunity of one's body to disease.

It is definitely a perverse spirit that drives people to this condition as described in:

**Romans 1: 26, 27** *“For even their women exchanged the natural use for what is against nature. Likewise, also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust for one another, men with men committing what is shameful, and receiving in them the penalty of their error which was due.”*

**“We feel very sorry for those that contracted AIDS without the cause as mentioned above and we trust God to touch those that trust Him for healing !”**

**But the question that comes to mind is: Where does this sin, also called sodomy come from?**

In **Gen. 19: 4 to 11** we read that the men of Sodom wanted to sexually assault two angels. Lot protected the angels and offered them his two daughters. The men didn't want the women but wanted these angels.. No wonder God's anger and judgment came on them.

### **OTHER SCRIPTURES ABOUT THIS SIN**

**Leviticus 20: 13; Deuteronomy 23: 17.**

**1 Kings 14: 24; 1 Kings 22: 46, 47; 2 Kings 23: 7**

**Is there deliverance? Yes definitely! The Corinthians were slaves to this sin, but were freed by Jesus' blood.**

We read in **1 Corinthians 6: 9 to 11** these words: *“Do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God ? Do not be deceived. Neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor **homosexuals**, nor **sodomites**, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers (those that brings division) nor extortioners (a blackmailer) will inherit the kingdom of God. And such were some of you. But you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus and by the Spirit of our God.”*

**FORTUNETELLING IS A SPIRIT.**

**Leviticus 20: 27.**

Notice that in **Acts 16:16 to 18** Paul did not address the woman but rather the demon spirit in her. Our battle is not against people, but against the evil spirits.

**WE READ IN THE BIBLE OF A DUMB SPIRIT.**

**Mark 9: 17, 18** " A man in the crowd answered, "Teacher, I brought you my son, who is possessed by a spirit that has robbed him of **speech**. Whenever it seizes him, it throws him to the ground. He foams at the mouth, gnashes his teeth and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to drive out the spirit, but they could not."

**Matthew 9: 32, 33** "While they were going out, a man who was demon-possessed **and could not talk** was brought to Jesus. And when the demon was driven out, the man who had been mute spoke. The crowd was amazed and said, "Nothing like this has ever been seen in Israel."

**Remember: Not everyone that cannot speak has a demon spirit!**

**REBELLION IS A SPIRIT.**

Hear what the Bible says about rebellion:

**1 Samuel 15: 23 "for rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft".**

**PRIDE IS A SPIRIT.**

This is the greatest door that we can leave open for demonic influence in our lives!

If we do not get rid of pride in our lives we will never be able to live in total victory over the enemy. This is what brought Lucifer down.

**Isaiah 14: 12 to 15** "How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, you who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will also sit on the mount of the congregation on the farthest sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, **I will be like the 'Most High'** Yet you shall be brought down to **sheol**, To the lowest depths of the Pit." (Meaning Hell)

## WHAT ARE OUR WEAPONS?

**2 Corinthians 10: 3 to 5** “For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war according to the flesh. **For our weapons of our warfare** are not carnal but mighty in God for pulling down strongholds, casting down arguments and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ.”

### **WITH THESE WEAPONS WE CAN DO THE FOLLOWING:**

**“casting down (to get rid of) arguments”** or plans. A plan is something that has not taken place yet.

We must not wait until the devil causes things to happen but if we know of his plan we must destroy it immediately. **2 Corinthians 2: 10, 11**

**“bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ”**

This doesn't mean that we control people's minds but those thoughts that are not to the glory of God; we take into captivity and make them obedient to Christ.

People do not come to repentance because the truth of salvation does not reach them. This is also true concerning any other truth. We must break down all wrong pretensions.

### **The Living Bible Translation says in 2 Corinthians 10 v. 5**

“With these arguments we break down every proud argument that keeps people from knowing God. With these weapons we conquer their rebellious ideas, and we teach them to obey Christ.”

### **Ephesians 6: 10 to 18 tells us more about our spiritual weapons:**

In verses 11,12 it says: “Put on the whole armour of God that you may be able to stand against the wiles (clever tricks) of the devil. For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.”

### **THEN PAUL GIVES A LIST OF OUR WEAPONS**

- A “Girdle” and calls it **Truth**  
Truth is a powerful weapon. It will set you and others free (John 8:32)
- A “Breastplate” and calls it **Righteousness**  
Righteousness is to stand in the right relationship with God
- “Shoes for our feet” and says this is **to preach the Gospel**  
The more we preach the Gospel the more we defeat the enemy
- A “Shield” and calls it our **Faith**  
A shield is to protect you so that the enemy's weapon does not harm you. This is what our faith in God does in our lives.  
You see without faith we cannot please God. **Hebrews 11: 6**
- A “Helmet” he calls our **Salvation**  
The battlefield is in the mind. If your mind is “protected” you will overcome
- The Word of God.  
The Word is like a sword! **Hebrews 4: 12; Ephesians 6: 17**

When Jesus was tempted by the devil He used the Word as a weapon to overcome. **Read what happened in Matthew 4**

### **WE ALSO HAVE OTHER WEAPONS:**

#### **Praise**

King Jehoshaphat had to fight a few nations that stood up against Judah.

#### **We read this story in 2 Chronicles 20:21 to 26**

In verse 21 and 22 we read: “And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed ***those who should sing to the Lord, and who should praise the beauty of holiness***, as they went out before the army and were saying: ‘Praise the Lord, for His mercy endures forever. Now when they began to sing and praise, the Lord set ambushes against the people of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, who had come against Judah; **and they were defeated.**”

Remember that these worshippers went out **before the army** and kept praising their God. The result was that the enemy destroyed one another. We read this from verse 23 and further.

King Jehoshaphat won the battle against his enemies long before he came to the valley of Beracah (Praise Valley).

#### **His spiritual warfare consisted of the following:**

He destroyed the idols.

He taught the people God’s ways. (**2 Chronicles 17**)

He put those praising God in the front as they went into war.

#### **Fasting -- Matthew 17: 15 to 21**

A man came to Jesus and said: “Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is an epileptic and suffers severely; for he often falls into the fire and often into the water. So I brought him to Your disciples, but they could not cure him.” (verses 15,16)

Jesus explained why His disciples could not cure this son.

He said in verse 21: “However, **this kind** does not go out except by prayer and fasting.”

Fasting is a great weapon against attacks from our spiritual enemy

#### **Speaking in tongues -- 1 Corinthians 14: 2**

Speaking in tongues is a powerful weapon, for this scripture says: “For he who speaks in a tongue does not speak to men but to God, for no one understands him; however, in the spirit he speaks mysteries.”

God understands us when we speak to him in tongues, but no one else. “**No one else**” includes the devil. Therefore, tongues must be a powerful weapon to use.

#### **Jesus’ Name -- John 14: 13, 14;**

“And whatever you ask in My name, that I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If you ask anything in My name, I will do it.”

Also read the following scriptures and you will find that the Name of Jesus is a “weapon” to give us breakthroughs in our lives.

**Acts 3: 5 to 8,16; 4: 10; Philippians 2: 4 to 11**

We will overcome in the Name of the Lord as David overcame Goliath!

**Our witness and Jesus' Blood. Revelations 12: 9 and 11**

“So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the devil and satan, who deceives the whole world: he was cast to the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. And they (God’s people) overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives to the death.”

Keep on being a witness for the Lord. Never stop telling others what God has done for you. The people out there are in great need and under a lot of pressure. We as God’s children can give them hope for the future by our testimony and by sharing the word of the Lord with them.

The Gospel is like a lifeline, and it will save the lost.



# THE HOLY SPIRIT

## WHO IS THE “HOLY SPIRIT”?

*The Holy Spirit is God!*

*When Ananias lied about the money he had to bring to the church, Peter said to him in **Acts 5:3,4** “Ananias, why has satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and keep back part of the price of the land for yourself While it remained, was it not your own ? And after it was sold, was it not in your own control ? Why have you conceived this thing in your heart ? You have not lied to men but to God.”*

- (1) The Holy Spirit is the one whom God used to create this earth.  
**Gen.1:1,2** “In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. The earth was without form, and void; and darkness was on the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.”

*EVERYTIME THE SPIRIT STARTS “MOVING” THINGS WILL HAPPEN !*

- (2) Job believed that the Holy Spirit made him.  
**Job.33:4** “*The Spirit of God has made me, and the breath of the Almighty gives me life.*”
- (3) The Holy Spirit is the one God the Father used to conceive our Lord Jesus Christ.  
**Matt.1:18** “*Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follows: After His Mother Mary was engaged to Joseph, before they came together (as man and wife) she was found with child of the Holy Spirit*”

The Living Bible: “While she was still a virgin she became pregnant by the Holy Spirit”

## THE HOLY SPIRIT IS A PERSON

A **PERSON** consists of a mind, will, intellect, and emotions

- (1) The Holy Spirit has a mind. **Rom.8:27** “Now He who searches the hearts know what the **mind of the Spirit is**, because He makes intercession for the saints according to the will of God.”
- (2) The Holy Spirit has a will and intellect.  
Concerning the giving of the Gifts we read in **1 Cor.12:11** “*But one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually as He wills.*”

**Acts.15:28** “For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things.”

**Acts 16:6,7** “Now when they had gone through Phrygia and the region of Galatia, they were forbidden by the Holy Spirit to preach the word in Asia. After they had come to Mysia, they tried to go into Bithynia, but the Spirit did not permit them.”

(3) The Holy Spirit has **emotions**.

**He can be grieved. Eph.4:30** “And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.”

### **HOW DO WE “GRIEVE” THE SPIRIT?**

By not telling the truth (**Eph.4:25**)

Through anger (**Eph.4:26**)

By stealing (**Eph.4:28**)

By speaking evil words (**Eph.4:29**)

Through bitterness (**Eph.4:31**)

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT CAN LOVE**

**Rom.15:30** “Now I beg you brethren, through the Lord Jesus Christ, **and through the love of the Spirit**, that you strive together with me in prayers to God for me.”

**Rom.5:5** “Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given us.”

**The more you have of God’s Spirit, the more love you Have !**

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT CAN SPEAK**

**John 16:13** “Whatever He hears He will speak; and He will tell you things to come.”

**Acts 13:2** “As they ministered to the Lord and fasted, the Holy Spirit said: ‘Now separate to me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.’”

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT SEARCHES THE DEEP THINGS OF GOD**

**1 Cor.2:10** “The Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God.”

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT GIVES POWER**

**Acts.1:8** “But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you.”

### **WHERE WE READ OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IT WILL BE IN CAPITAL LETTERS**

**John 14:26** “But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, **He** will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all things that said to you.”

**John 15:26** “But when the Helper comes, whom I shall send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father, **He** will testify of Me.”  
*Amplified Bible says: “But when the Comforter (Counsellor, Helper, Advocate, Intercessor, Strenghtener, Standby) comes.”*

**John 16:13** “However, when **He**, the Spirit of truth, has come, **He** will guide you into all truth: for **He** will not speak on **His** own authority, but whatever **He** hears **He** will speak; and **He** will tell you things to come.”

## **THE GODHEAD of the HOLY SPIRIT**

*THE GODHEAD IS THE SAME IN WORKING BUT DIFFERENT IN PERSON. ONE GOD BUT THREE PERSONS.*

**How can THREE be ONE ?**

**1 John 5:7** “For there are **three** that bear witness in heaven: the Father, the Word (This is Jesus if you understand **John 1:14**) and the Holy Spirit; **and these three are one.**” (It will be a good thing to study **1 John 5:6-8**)

**THEIR ONENESS:**

When Paul wrote to the Ephesian church about the unity of the Godhead he said it like this in **Eph.4:4-6** “There is one body (the church) and one SPIRIT (the Holy Spirit) just as you were called in one hope of your calling; one LORD (Jesus Christ) one faith. One baptism; one GOD and Father of all, who is above all, and through all, and in all.”

The Father and Jesus Christ are one **John 10:30** “I and My Father are one”

**DIFFERENT IN PERSONS:**

When Jesus was baptized. Jesus stood in the Jordan river and the Father spoke from heaven.

**Matt.3:16,17** “When He had been baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and alighting upon Him. And suddenly a voice came from heaven, saying, ‘This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.’ “

That’s why Jesus gave the command to baptize in the name of the **Father, Son** and the **Holy Spirit.** (**Matt.28:19**)

When God created man we read of their **plurality**

**Gen.1:26** “Then God said, ‘Let **Us** make man in **Our** image, according to **Our** likeness;”

**THE HOLY SPIRIT IS EVERLASTING**

**Heb.9:14** “how much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the **eternal Spirit** offered Himself without spot to God,”

## **THE FRUIT OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

In **Gal.5:22,23** we read: “*But the Fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control.*” These are Christian virtues and are a characteristic of a real follower of Jesus Christ.

**These virtues can be divided into three groups:**

**(1) CONCERNING YOURSELF**

Longsuffering  
Joy  
Self-control

**(2) CONCERNING YOUR FELLOW MAN**

Kindness  
Gentleness  
Goodness

**(3) CONCERNING YOUR RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD**

Love  
Peace  
Faithfulness

Test yourself to see if you have these virtues. If you have them you have the fruit of the Spirit.

The Bible does not make mention of the “FRUITS” (**Plural**) of the Spirit but uses the word “FRUIT” (**Singular**) of the Spirit.

Someone once said these words:

### **THE FRUIT OF THE SPIRIT IS LOVE**

**JOY** is the happiness that comes through **LOVE**

**PEACE** is the rest that flows from **LOVE**

**LONGSUFFERING** is **LOVE** tested

**KINDNESS** is **LOVE** that moves around

**GOODNESS** is **LOVE** in action

**FAITHFULNESS** is **LOVE** that endures

**GENTLENESS** is the result of **LOVE**

**SELF-CONTROL** is the discipline of **LOVE**

### **WHAT IS THE MEANING OF THE WORD “LOVE” IN GREEK ?**

“eros” Physical love

“philia” Friendship love (think of David/Jonathan)

“storge” Family love

“agape” Godly love

### **WHAT BRINGS JOY IN OUR LIVES ?**

The joy of the Lord is our strength (**Neh.8:11**)

**God's Word.** *Jer.15:16* "Your Words were found, and I ate them. And Your Word was to me the **joy and rejoicing** of my heart."

**Prayer.** *John 16:24* "Until now you have asked nothing in My Name. Ask, and you will receive, that your joy may be full."

**The church.** *Ps.122:1* "I was glad when they said unto me: Let us go into the house of the Lord."

**When a sinner comes to Christ.**

*Luke 15:7* "there will be joy in heaven over one sinner who repents."

Is it possible to experience joy at all times ?

The Bible says we can. We read of this in *Phil.4:4* "Rejoice in the Lord always, again I say, rejoice." *1 Thes.5:16* "Rejoice always."

Paul and Silas had joy even in prison. They were beaten, in chains and it was cold and wet, but still they were praising God. (**Acts 16:25-34**)

**Peace.** The Hebrew word is "Shalom"

**Col. 3:15** says: "And let the peace of God rule in your hearts, to which also you were called in one body; and be thankful."

There is a translation on Col.3:15 that says that the peace of God is as a referee in our lives. Yes, when a referee blows the whistle, you must stop whatever you are doing.

The referee knows the rules of the game. Make sure that you keep the peace of the Lord in your life. Always listen to that inner still voice.

**Longsuffering.**

This word comes from the Greek word "makro-tumos"

Two words. The one "makro" is "long or big" and the other word "tumos" is "temper"

You could almost say: Not **short tempered** but **long tempered**

This is a person that does not get angry easily.

**Kindness and Goodness.** They are joined together

These are moral qualities that God puts into our lives. No person can really be good.

It is only the goodness of God that works through you and me.

**Faithfulness.** This is a virtue that we miss amongst the children of the Lord today.

According to **2 Chron.31:18** people could only work with the Holy things of God if they were faithful. Some translations say that only those who were faithful were appointed to work with the Holy things of God.

**Gentleness and Self-control.**

Gentleness is the result of self-control. If you cannot have self-control you will not experience gentleness in your life.

*Phil.4:5* "Let your gentleness be known to all men. The Lord is at hand."

## **THE WORK of THE HOLY SPIRIT**

**John 16:5-11** *“But now I go away to Him who sent Me, and none of you asks Me, ‘Where are You going?’ But because I have said these things to you, sorrow has filled your hearts. Nevertheless, I tell you the truth. It is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the **Helper** (parracletos) will not come to you; but if I depart, I will send Him to you. And when He has come, He will **convict** (not accuse) the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment: **of sin**, because they do not believe in Me; **of righteousness**, because I go to My Father and you see Me no more; **of judgment**, because the ruler of this world is judged.”*

**ACCORDING TO THE AMPLIFIED BIBLE IN JOHN 14:16 THE HOLY SPIRIT HAS A SEVEN-FOLD MINISTRY:**

*“And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Comforter (COUNSELOR; HELPER; INTERCESSOR; ADVOCATE; STRENGTHENER and STANDBY) That He may remain with you forever.”*

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT REGENERATES**

**Titus 3:5** *“He saved us, not on the basis of deeds which we have done in righteousness, but according to His mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewing by the Holy Spirit”*

The Greek word for regeneration here is **palingenesia** and means “to be birthed again”. (See 2 Corinthians 3:6)

**John 3:3** *“Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God”*

**1 Cor. 12:13** *“For by one Spirit we are all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free; and have all been made to a drink into one Spirit”*

**NOTE:** By comparing this reference with 1 Peter 1:23 we again see that the two operating powers are the Word and the Spirit. This truth applies to the new birth, the creation, and all of the works of God.

It is therefore vitally important that we be equipped with the Word so that the Spirit will be quickened and released to work. The Spirit is not released to save men by the preaching of any gospel, but rather “THE” Gospel. The same is true concerning all the truths of the Bible. If we want to see the Spirit released to perform His word, we must be speaking the right Word.

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT INDWELLS THE BELIEVER**

**John 14:17** *“Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, either knoweth Him: but ye know Him; for He dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.”*

**Rom. 8:9** *“But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”*

**2 Tim 1:14** *“That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us”*

To “ *dwell*” speaks of taking up permanent residence. It is the same as **to live in**, just as a family lives in a house.

Some have taken the position that the Holy Spirit’s personal presence does not actually live in the believer, but that He is present in a mystical “*omnipresent*” sense.

This, of course, is a denial of a very central teaching of the New Covenant and is to be rejected.

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT SETS US FREE FROM THE POWERS OF SIN AND DEATH**

**Rom. 8:1–2** *“There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.”*

**Eph. 3:16** *“that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with might by His Spirit in the inner man.”*

**Eph. 1:19** *“And what is the exceeding greatness of His power to us-ward who believe, according to the working of His mighty power”*

This shows us that we are no longer limited to natural powers in order to live up to God’s standards, but rather, God has planted within us all of the spiritual resources of the Holy Spirit. We can no longer say that we are “just human” for we are human possessed by the Holy Spirit.

Through this added dynamic of the Holy Spirit in our lives, God has broken our bondage to the enslavement of sin. We are now in another Kingdom and enabled to serve a new Master. (Rom 6:13-18)

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT RENEW OUR MINDS.**

**Rom. 12:1-2** *“I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect will of God”*

The expressed will and purpose of God is to bring each Christian to the image of His Son. (**Rom. 8:29; Col. 3:10**) This takes place here in this life, and not suddenly at the second coming. God wants us to so yield to His changing in this life that all that will need to be changed at the second coming will be our bodies.

The emphasis of the Scriptures is not the idea of being changed in the eternities of the future, but rather during this life. The Spirit becomes life and liberation within us working out the very image of Christ. (**Gal. 4:19; 2:20**)

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT GIVES ASSURANCE OF SALVATION**

**Rom. 8:16** *“The Spirit Himself bears witness with our Spirit, that we are children of God”*

**Eph. 1:13–14** *“In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also, after that ye believed, ye were sealed with the Holy Spirit of promise, which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession unto the praise of His glory.”*

He constantly bears witness of our relationship with God. We actually go through many experiences with the Lord through the Spirit. It is a real and active relationship and not just a doctrine.

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT FILLS THE BELIEVER**

**Act. 2:4** *“And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”*

**AMPLIFIED BIBLE:** *“They were all filled – diffused throughout their souls – with the Holy Spirit.”*

**This means the Holy Spirit filled their MINDS; WILL and EMOTIONS**

**Act 4:31** *“And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spoke the word of God with boldness.”*

**Eph. 5:18** *“And be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit”*

### **Wrong teaching on the Baptism of the Holy Spirit**

- (1) You have to wait a long time to receive
- (2) You have to beg God
- (3) This was only for the first church
- (4) You must be real holy to receive
- (5) All Christians have the Holy Spirit after salvation

Notice that in this verse being filled with the Spirit is not presented as a option, but an imperative.

At least nine times the New Testament speaks of being filled with the Spirit. It speaks of being inwardly pervaded, meaning *“to completely fill and influence.”*



## **THE HOLY SPIRIT EQUIPS THE BELIEVER FOR SERVICE**

**Acts 1:8** *“But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto Me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth”*

**1 Cor. 12:7-11** *“But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to each one **for the profit of all**”* (Also see: **Rom.12:3-8; 1 Cor. 4:7; Eph. 4:11**)

### **DID YOU KNOW ?**

Jesus was born through the Spirit (Luke 1:35)

Jesus was led by the Spirit (Matt.4:1)

Jesus was anointed by the Spirit for His ministry (Acts 10:38)

Jesus was raised from death by the Spirit (Rom.8:11)

Jesus gave His commands to the first church through the Spirit (Acts 1:2)

## **THE HOLY SPIRIT PRODUCES SPIRITUAL FRUIT IN THE BELIEVER**

**Gal. 5:22-23** *“But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, long-suffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law”*

**Phil. 1:11** *“Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God”*

**Jam. 3:17** *“But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be entreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy”*

This speaks of the very nature and personality of the Lord being expressed through believers.

**Col. 1:10; Ps. 92:13-14; Mat 13:23, John 15:2; Rom 5:3-4; 1 Pet. 1:5-7**

## **THE HOLY SPIRIT GUIDES THE BELIEVER**

**Rom. 8:14** *“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”*

**John. 16:13** *“Howbeit when He, the Spirit of truth, is come, He will guide you into all truth: for He shall not speak of Himself; but whatsoever He shall hear, that shall He speak: and He will show you things to come.”*

**Act. 10:19-20** *“While Peter thought on the vision, the Spirit said unto him, Behold, three men seek thee. Arise therefore, and get thee down, and go with them, doubting nothing: for I have sent them.”*

This shows us that He controls the movement of believers in their ministry (Also read Acts 16:6)

**Acts 13:2** – *“As they ministered to the Lord and, fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate Me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.”*  
**He directs in the selection and sending out of leaders.**

## **THE HOLY SPIRIT QUICKENS THE BELIEVER'S BODY NOW AND ALSO AT THE FINAL RESURRECTION**

**Rom 8:11** *“But if the Spirit of Him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, He that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by His Spirit that dwelleth in you.”*

The word “quicken” here means “to make alive” It is the new life which our bodies will take on, rather than physical healing or preservation, that is being referred to here, similar to the reference to the bodily resurrection of Christ in the same verse (See also 1 Peter 3:18)

**2 Cor. 3:18** *“But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.”*

It will be the Spirit who will also perform the final change. In fact, **John 14:16** leads us to believe that the Spirit will abide in us even in eternity. Is it possible that blood will no longer animate this body, rather it will be animated by the Spirit?

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT HELPS US IN:**

**Prayer - Jude 20** *“But ye, beloved, building up yourselves in your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost.”*

**Rom. 8:26** *“Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities; for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.” (1 Cor.14:2,14,15)*

**Worship – Phil. 3:3** – *“For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the Spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh”*

**John 4:23-24** - *“But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship Him. God is a Spirit: and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth.”*

**Spiritual singing – Eph. 5:18–20** – *“And be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit; Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord; Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.”*

**Col. 3:16** – *“Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; reaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.”*

**1 Cor. 14:15** – *“What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also.”*

## **A STUDY ON JOHN 14, 15 and 16**

**John 14 Verse 16,17** *“And I will pray the Father, and He will give you **another Helper**, that He may abide with you forever, the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees Him nor knows Him; but you know Him, for He dwells with you and will be in you.”*

## **THE HOLY SPIRIT CONVICTS**

**John 16:8** *“And when He has come (the Spirit) He will **CONVICT** the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment.”*

**Remember: The Holy Spirit CONVICTS and not ACCUSES !**

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT WILL CONVICT OF SIN:**

This happened on the day of Pentecost (**Acts.2:37,38**)

This also happened in the Old Testament when the **“Finger of God”** wrote on the wall in the palace of Belshazzar (**Dan.5:5,26-28**)

### **HE WILL CONVICT OF RIGHTEOUSNESS:**

Righteousness is everything that pleases God.

When you do the right thing, the Holy Spirit will tell you that

### **HE WILL ALSO CONVICT OF JUDGMENT:**

Remember there will be a Judgment day. The one is for the Righteous where we will receive our reward and the other is for the lost that will receive punishment.

The first judgment we find in **2 Cor.5:10** and the other one in **Rev.20:12-15**

## **UNDER THE CONTROL OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

Because Paul was under the control of the Holy Spirit he could write the following words in **Acts 20:22-24** *“And see, now I go bound in the Spirit to Jerusalem, not knowing the things that will happen to me there, except that the Holy Spirit testifies in every city, saying that chains and tribulations await me. But none of these things move me; nor do I count my life dear to myself, so that I may finish my race with joy, and the ministry which I received from the Lord Jesus, to testify to the gospel of the grace of God.”*

God wants us to be controlled and even “driven” by the Holy Spirit.

We read of Jesus in **Mark 1:12,13** *“Immediately the Spirit drove Him into the wilderness. And He was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted by satan, and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered to Him.”*

Anybody that is bound by someone else is under their control.

Paul once said in **Eph.4:1** *“I, therefore, the prisoner of the Lord”*

### **A PRISONER IS:**

- Someone who cannot do what he chooses to do.
- Someone who knows discipline.
- Someone who works according to a program and time schedule.

## **THANK GOD, FOR THE SPIRIT HE HAS GIVEN US**

**2 Tim.1:7** “For God has not given us a Spirit of **FEAR**, but of **POWER** and of **LOVE** and of a **SOUND MIND**.”

### ➤ **HE HAS GIVEN US A SPIRIT OF POWER**

**Acts 1:8 (Amplified Bible)** “But you shall receive power – ability, efficiency and might”

The Greek word used here is “*dunamis*” meaning “*indwelling power*”

Smith Wigglesworth (a mighty man of God) once said:

“I am bigger on the inside than on the outside.”

**1 John 4:4** “**He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.**”

### ➤ **GOD HAS GIVEN US A SPIRIT OF LOVE**

Jesus said in **John 13:35** “By this all will know that you are My disciples, if you have love for one another.”

**Romans 5:5** “the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.”

“Do not show me your abilities but show me your love, then I will know how full you are of the Holy Spirit!”

*You see, if you can love you will abide in the light, and you will not cause any stumbling.*

*1 John 2:10* “He who loves his brother abides in the light,…”

*The love of God in our hearts drives out all fear ! 1 John 4:18* “There is no fear in Love; but the perfect love casts out fear, because fear involves torment. But he who fears has not been made perfect in love.”

### ➤ **GOD HAS GIVEN US A SPIRIT OF SELF-CONTROL (A SOUND MIND)**

*If our minds are controlled by God’s Spirit, our self-life will be controlled.*

*Because the “battlefield” is the mind !*

**READ WHAT THE DEVIL TRIED TO DO BY “POISONING THE MINDS” OF THE GENTILES AGAINST THE BELIEVERS.**

**We read this in Acts 14:1-7**

## **THE ANOINTING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

If you read **Psalm 92**, you'll find the following in **verse 11**:

"You have exalted my horn like that of a wild ox; fine oils have been poured upon me." The King James Translation expresses it as follows "I shall be anointed with fresh oil"

I believe that this "FRESH OIL" relates to the Holy Spirit!

Thank God for the freshness of the Holy Spirit! 2000 years ago the Holy Spirit was poured out for the first time on the church in Acts 2 : Today His working in us is just as refreshing as in those days!

If there is one thing that we need in the church these days it is A FRESH ANOINTING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT!

In this teaching on the anointing with the Holy Spirit it will become clear to you how important the anointing is to us.

### **FIRST A QUESTION:**

Is the anointing of the Holy Spirit something that I can "feel" on my body?

Personally, I often experience the anointing of the Holy Spirit as an incredibly supernatural power that controls my body, and is like "goose bumps"

Maybe you can identify with this?

### **Did Job have a similar experience to this?**

We read of it in Job 4: 12 to 15. It reads: "fear and trembling seized me and made all my bones shake. A spirit glided past my face, and the hair on my body stood on end."

### **You can also read of Daniel's experience in Daniel 10:10 to 17.**

WE TALK OF THE ANOINTING THE HOLY SPIRIT BECAUSE IT IS BIBLICAL.

If I say biblical, I mean it's the "language" the Bible uses.

**Jesus read out of Isaiah 61 in the synagogue, referring to Himself and said the following:**

*"The Spirit of the Lord is on Me, because He has **anointed** Me to preach good news to the poor. He has sent Me to proclaim freedom for the prisoners and recovery of sight for the blind, to release the oppressed, to proclaim the year of the Lord's favour." (Luke 4: 18,19)*

Peter says the following in **Acts 10: 38** "*how God **anointed** Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and power, and how He went around doing good and healing all who were under the power of the devil, because God was with Him.*"

Other scriptures referring to **anointing** are found in 1 John 2: 20 to 27 (2 Corinthians 1: 21).

What is written here does not mean that we cannot learn anything from others!

But if we are united to the Holy Spirit, He will lead us into all truth. Yes, even things that we don't know He will make known to us (John 16:13)

**ANOINTING WITH OIL AND THE ANOINTING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT:**

To understand the message of the anointing of the Holy Spirit we must look in the Old Testament at the following things:

What value was placed on the anointing with oil.

We also see that when people (and also objects) were anointed with oil then God's anointing and glory descended on them.

**IN THE OLD TESTAMENT SEVEN THINGS WERE ANOINTED FOR GOD:**

1. The Tabernacle -- **Exodus 30: 26 to 29; Exodus 40: 9; Leviticus 9: 10**
2. The altar -- **Exodus 29:36; 40: 10; Leviticus 8: 11**
3. The wash basin -- **Exodus 40: 11**
4. All the Tabernacle equipment **Exodus 40: 9 to 15**  
**YOU WILL SEE THAT EVERYTHING THAT WAS USED TO WORSHIP GOD WAS ANOINTED.**
5. Bread -- **Exodus 29: 2; Leviticus 2: 4; 7: 12.**
6. Shields -- **Isaiah 21: 5; 2 Samuel 1: 21**
7. Pillars -- **Genesis 31: 13**

**THE PRIESTS WERE ALSO SANCTIFIED TO THE LORD WITH OIL.**

**Exodus 29: 7,29; 40: 13**

**Psalm 133:2** tells us how this anointing was: "It is like precious oil poured on the head, running down on the beard, running down on Aaron's beard, down upon the collar of his robes."

This kind of anointing in biblical times was visible to others! A person could not have oil on his head, beard and clothes without anyone seeing it!

THE SAME IS TRUE WHEN SOMEONE IS ANOINTED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT. ALL THOSE AROUND YOU WILL KNOW.

***I HAVE EXPERIENCED IN THE PAST THAT WHEN SOMEONE IS ANOINTED WITH OIL, IN THE NAME OF THE LORD, THE LORD ALSO ANOINTS HIM WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT!***

When David was anointed by Samuel to set him apart as king, God also anointed him with the Holy Spirit! The Bible tells us in 1 Samuel 16: 13 that the Holy Spirit came on David since that day.

**WHAT HAPPENS WITH US WHEN GOD ANOINTS US WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT?**

1. **We become totally different people!**

Read what happened to Saul in **1 Samuel 10: 6.**

Yes, you cannot change yourself, but if you allow God's Holy Spirit to take control of your life you will be changed.

## 2. Anointing opens our eyes.

*In **Numbers 24: 1 to 4** we read of Balaam and how the Spirit of God came on him.*

*In the third verse he could speak of himself as a man with opened eyes, because the Spirit rested on him! In **Revelation 3: 17, 18** Jesus speaks of the ointment that we can put on our eyes to make us to see.*

*Why did the congregation in Laodicea need this ointment? Because they were "Lukewarm" and did not even know it! Have you lost your zeal for God? Then pray for a new anointing of the Holy Spirit.*

In **2 Kings 6** we read of Elisha and his servant Gehazi. It is clear in the story that Elisha's spiritual eyes were open but that was not the case with Gehazi. Elisha could see far more than just the enemy! Elisha was anointed with the Holy Spirit but we cannot say this of Gehazi.

GOD LOOKS FOR MEN AND WOMEN WHO HE CAN ANOINT WITH HIS SPIRIT, SO THEY CAN SEE MORE THAN NORMAL PEOPLE.

## 3. The anointing gives us power!

Just before Jesus ascended to heaven He said the following in **Acts 1:8** "But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and the ends of the earth."

The Holy Spirit really gives us power to witness for Christ.

Often we don't need a holiday but rather a fresh anointing of the Holy Spirit.

THE WORLD STILL NEEDS TO SEE WHAT GOD CAN DO THROUGH SOMEBODY WHO'S ANOINTED BY GOD.

No wonder Samson could kill the lion that attacked him – God's anointing enabled him to do it. We read of this in **Judges 14:6**

There is a roaring lion that wants to destroy us and those we love, and his name is the devil. But by the power of the Holy Spirit we can resist and defeat this enemy.

## 4. The anointing places us under the control of God's will.

Samson – **Judges 13:25**

Jesus – **Mark 1:12,13**

Paul - **Acts 20:22 to 24**

## 5. The anointing makes you grow spiritually.

Have you grown in your prayer life, knowledge of God and your availability for the Lord? One that's anointed will never stagnate.

By the way: If you do something for God without an anointing, then you were never called to do it.

The anointing of the Holy Spirit confirms your calling for a cause.

Read **Psalms 92:11 to 15** carefully again.

When God anoints somebody with His Spirit then he grows like a palm

tree and is planted in the house of the Lord.

In other words, you are linked to God's church because you are like a stone built into it. Loose stones can be carried away, but not those built into a building.

There are too many "loose stones" in God's church these days.

**The New Living Translation verse 15** as follows **"Even in old age they will still produce fruit; they will remain vital and green."**

Anna, the prophetess, was 84 years old but still full of life and could fast. This was because she was full of God's Spirit. We read of this in **Luke 2**.

**6. God's anointing on me can influence other people for God!**

Therefore, we see in the Bible the anointing on somebody could be transferred to another.

One of the most outstanding examples of this took place in **Numbers 11: 25**.

God took the Spirit that rested on Moses and placed some of it on the 70 elders so that they prophesied.

**7. The anointing breaks yokes.**

The King James Translation of Isaiah 10: 27 expresses it as follows "and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing"

In the past we have seen how yokes (burdens) have literally fallen off and disappeared when God comes on people by His Spirit.

Your yoke shall also be broken when you allow the Spirit to have total control over your life.

**ASK GOD FOR A "FRESH" ANOINTING BY HIS SPIRIT!**



# **THE SIN AGAINST THE HOLY SPIRIT**

**You can sin against the Holy Spirit by doing the following:**

**Resisting the Spirit** Acts 7:51 *“ye stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears! You always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do you.”*

This speaks of opposing and striving against the Lord. Stephen here calls the Jews “*stiff-necked*” not having a heart to obey God or hear His Word. This sin, therefore, involves stubbornness and open disobedience; openly refusing instruction and the Word of the Lord.

**2 Tim. 3:8** *“Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, as do these also resist the truth: men of corrupt minds, disapproved concerning the faith”.*

(Also read: **Ex. 32:9; 2 Chron. 24:19; Jer. 32:33; 44:16; Zec 7:11**)

**Grieving the Spirit** Eph 4:30 *“And grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby you are sealed unto the day of redemption.”*

(Also read: **Psalms 78:40**)

Grief is deep sadness or sorrow. It speaks of intense and inner affliction.

**Jer. 45:3** says: *“For the Lord added grief to my sorrow”*

Grieve is more than sorrow.

The Holy Spirit is as a dove and is very sensitive. All bitterness, anger, resentment, quarrelling, abusive and evil speech, lying one to another, giving place to the devil, stealing. etc., are a grief to Him.

**Eph. 4:25-28**

If we continue to grieve the Holy Spirit, then His grief turns into holy anger.

**Is. 63:10** *“But they rebelled, and vexed His Holy Spirit: therefore, He was turned to be their enemy, and He fought against them.”*

(Also read: **Gen. 6:6; Ps. 95:9-10**)

**Lying to the Spirit** Acts 5:3-4 *“But Peter said, Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and keep back part of the price of the land for yourself? While it remained, was it not your own? And after it was sold, was it not in your own control? Why have you conceived this thing in your heart? You have not lied to men but to God.”*

Notice, they could have kept some of the money for themselves. In was in their power to do so. Their sin was that they lied to the Spirit of God.

**Quenching the Spirit 1 Thes. 5:19 “*Quench not the Spirit....*”**

Quench means to “*extinguish, smother, or put out.*” Thus this has to do with the failure to obey and respond to something the Spirit prompts a person to do, whether prophesying and manifesting spiritual gifts, witnessing to another about Christ, or obeying His dictates in Christian living. It means to quench or smother the Spirit’s will.

Churches can do this by forbidding prophecy and the expression of the gifts. Individuals can do it by being fearful and apprehensive, not responding to what the Spirit prompts them to do. In this actual order, the next step after quenching the Spirit would undoubtedly be grieving Him. Those who persist in withstanding God’s Spirit, will eventually grieve Him.

**Blaspheming the Holy Spirit Matt. 12:22-37.** To blaspheme means “to speak abusively of or speak contempt against God or things sacred.” It is important to keep the term in its Scriptural context and not throw it around loosely. It is important to understand the context of the passage: Israel continued to be a rebellious and stiff-necked people, rejecting and resisting Christ at every possible opportunity. They were hard and cruel, even in the face of Christ’s miracles of deliverance and compassion. They not only rejected Jesus as a man, but also the power of the Holy Ghost working through Him.

This is especially serious when we realize that Christ’s miracles were done by the Spirit and were designed to testify of who He was. The Spirit confirmed Christ’s message by divine acts of healings etc. (**John 5:36; 10:36-38**) Christ was doing these miracles by the Spirit, to seal His identity and to show that what He was doing was of God’s Kingdom

So, to reject His works and attribute them to demons was the sin of the Pharisees. They recognized His power, and they did not deny it or call Him a hoax or phoney. Instead they actually took the worst possible position, attributing it to Beelzebub (connected with Baal, the god of Ekron – **2 Kings 1:2**)

This accusation constituted a final and persistent rejection of the Spirit’s testimony of Christ. Theirs was not a single act but a continuous resisting of the Spirit. It was not out of ignorance or without light that they spoke but outright refusal and rejection of all divine testimony. They, in fact, made the occasion of the displayed power of the Spirit an opportunity to show spite towards Christ, the Son of God. Such people are without hope and bear the unmistakable stamp of perdition.

This was the sin into which many of the Israelites fell.

This sin then constitutes a rejection of Christ following the Holy Spirit’s revelation of whom He is; it is to knowingly slander and refuse Him. This point of revelation is not just at hearing a sermon or a Sunday School lesson. Even Jesus said: “*Forgive them, for they KNOW NOT ....*”

**Please do not reject God’s Spirit but allow Him to control your life!**

# **THE KINGDOM OF GOD**

**All Jesus' preaching was about the kingdom of God.**

**Matt. 4:17,23:** "From that time Jesus began to preach and to say: repent, for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand. And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the Kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people." It is clear that no person can enter into God's kingdom without salvation. It is clearly illustrated from what happened in Matt. 4, that where the Kingdom of God comes, there healing and miracles occur.

At the first increase of the loaves, we read these wonderful words in Luke. 9:11: "And He received them, and spoke to them of the kingdom of God". Even in the "Our Father" Jesus teaches us to pray: "Thy Kingdom come;" (Matt. 6:10). Also read: Matt. 5:10 & Matt. 10:7,8.

In Matt. 6:33, Jesus tells us to seek His Kingdom. "But seek ye first the Kingdom of God and His Righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you". ("These things" refers to food, drink and clothes).

## **THIS SCRIPTURE DOES NOT STATE:**

"So that all these things can be added unto you".

Nor does it say: "With the motive to get all these things"

**DO NOT LOOK AT WHAT YOU CAN GET OUT OF YOUR SERVICE TO GOD, BUT RATHER LOOK AT WHAT YOU CAN PUT INTO IT.**

## **AMPLIFIED BIBLE – Matt. 6:33**

"But seek for (aim at and strive after) first of all His Kingdom, and His Righteousness (His way of doing and being right) and then all these things taken together will be given you besides"

## **THE LIVING BIBLE - Matt. 6:33**

"And He will give them to you (your material need) if you give Him first place in your life and live as he wants you to".

## **GET YOUR PRIORITIES RIGHT!!**

God comes before my husband or wife! Before my work; my studies; my family; my friends; my pleasure and my own needs!

## **WHAT DO WE MEAN WHEN WE SPEAK OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD?**

The Greek word for "Kingdom" is Basileia.

It refers to: a SOVEREIGN AREA".

God's Kingdom is the area and the place where the will of God is acknowledged and obeyed.

IN MY HEART - Therefore you need to preserve your heart from evil.(Mark. 7)

IN MY HOME - What do you allow in your home?

IN MY BUSINESS OR WORK. - That is why you need to do honest business.

COME LET US DEDICATE THE AREA WHERE WE LIVE, WORK OR STUDY, TO GOD.

Charles Finney, the mighty evangelist dedicated his town to God, even when trains past in the night, people fell down and surrendered to God. Come let us take control of our communities for the Lord.

Listen carefully to the words of Paul in 2 Cor. 10:3,4: "For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh: For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds"

(Also read v. 5 & 6). Come let us use these weapons to nullify the plans of Satan.

In Luke. 17:10,21 Jesus tells us that we need to understand the Kingdom of God spiritually. "And when Pharisees asked Him when the Kingdom of God will come.

He answered them and said: The Kingdom of God does not come with visible signs. They will not say: Look here! Or Look there! Because the Kingdom of God is within you".

THIS IS SO IF GOD REIGNS IN MY HEART! IS THIS ALSO YOUR TESTIMONY?

JESUS' OWN DESCIPLES THOUGHT THAT HIS KINGDOM WOULD BE ESTABLISHED WHEN HE DELIVERED THEM FROM THE YOKE OF THE ROMANS.

LOOK AT THEIR QUESTION AND HIS ANSWER:

Acts 1:6-8: "When they came together, they asked him, saying: Lord will Thy restore again the Kingdom of Israel? And He said unto them: It is not for you to know the time or the seasons, which the Father has put in His own power. But you shall receive power when the Holy Ghost comes upon you: and you shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem and in all Judea, and in Samaria and unto the uttermost parts of the earth.

JESUS SAID UNTO PILATE:

John.18:36, "My kingdom is not of this world, and if it were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I would not be delivered to the Jews; but now my kingdom is not from hence".

1 Cor. 4:20, is a very special word where Paul says: "for the Kingdom of God is not in word, but in power".

An example of this we find where Jesus drove a blind and dumb spirit out of a man.

The Pharisees accused Jesus that He did this through the power of the devil. Jesus answered them in Matt. 12:28: "But, if I cast out devils by the spirit of God, then the Kingdom of God is come unto you".

OH! That God would establish His Kingdom through the power of the Holy Spirit.

We conclude from Matt. 12 that each time when God works through His Holy Spirit, his Kingdom comes in that place.

## WE EXPERIENCE THE KINGDOM OF GOD AT EACH

Conversion

In-filling with the Holy Spirit

Healing

Deliverance

## HOW CAN WE COMPARE THE KINGDOM OF GOD?

It is like Seed (Matt.13)

It is about Forgiveness (Matt.18:13-25)

It is like a landowner who hired labourers (Matt. 20:1-6)

It is like a virgin preparing for her bridegroom (Matt. 25:1-13)

WARNING: The Kingdom of God can be taken away!

**Matt. 21:43** ***“The Kingdom of God will be taken from you and given to a Nation bearing the fruit of it”***

## THE FOLLOWING PEOPLE ALSO PREACHED THE KINGDOM OF GOD:

John the Baptist Matt. 3:2 “Repent for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand.”

The Disciples Matt. 10:7

Phillip Acts 8:12 “He preached the things concerning the Kingdom”

Paul Acts 14:21,22; 19:8; 20:25; 28:23

*“We must through many tribulations enter into the Kingdom of God” (Acts 14)*

## WHAT ARE THE CONDITIONS FOR ENTRY INTO THE KINGDOM OF GOD?

*Repent (Matt.3:2)*

*Be born again (John 3:5)*

*Be humble in your spirit (Matt.5:3)*

*Have a servant heart (Matt.25:34-40)*

*Never Quit (Luke 9:62)*

*Be like a child (Luke 18:16,17)*

*Come in right standing with God (1 Cor.6:9-11)*

**Get rid of the works of the flesh** (Gal.5:19-21 Eph.5:5)

- **In Matt.5 to 7 Jesus teaches us the principles of the Kingdom**
- **In Matt.8 and 9 TEN Miracles took place, and was to confirm the Kingdom of God**
- **In Matt 10 Jesus sends His disciples out to extend His Kingdom. He gives His disciples authority in His Kingdom**

## **THE KEYS OF THE KINGDOM**

### **Matt. 16:13-19**

The Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Heaven are the same. The reason why Matthew did not speak of the Kingdom of God, but of the Kingdom of the Heaven, is because the Jews believed that the name of God may not be spoken or written down. They were afraid that they might do it in vain! **Ex. 20:7** "You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain, for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that takes His name in vain".

### **In Matt. 16:19, Jesus teaches us that this Kingdom has keys!**

- Each house and business has its own keys
- Not everyone has entrance to the house, but only those who live there.
- Will you give important keys to anyone or to a child ?  
No, only to those you can trust !
- Motorcar keys?
- Front door keys?
- Kitchen cupboards?
- The safe?

**Question:** Can God trust you with the keys of His Kingdom?  
With these keys we can lock and unlock.

### **WHAT ARE THE KEYS OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD?**

The first key: Matt 18:1-4 **HUMILITY:**

If you want to become the most important one in life, decide to be the least.

Matt. 12:22-25 **UNITY:**

If a Kingdom is divided against itself, it shall not stand. If we are divided, we will not be able to open spiritual doors.

In Rom. 14:17. Paul gives us 3 keys on a key ring.

"For the Kingdom of God is not meat and drink;

but **RIGHTEOUSNESS** and **PEACE** and **JOY** in the Holy Ghost".

**AMPLIFIED BIBLE:** "after all the Kingdom of God is not a matter of food and drink but instead, it is righteousness – that state which makes a person acceptable to God and heart peace and joy in the Holy Spirit".

### **THE FIRST KEY on this ring: RIGHTEOUSNESS**

Righteousness refers to our right standing with God.

A state where I am acceptable before God. - without any unpaid debt.

Only a blood offering is acceptable to God! Think of the blood offering which the high priest had to bring on the Day of Atonement.

### **CAN GOD SEE THE BLOOD OF JESUS IN YOUR LIFE?**

According to Rom. 4:3-5, we do not become righteous because we deserve it, but through faith in God.

Hezekiah had 15 years added to his life because he had the key of righteousness in his hand on his deathbed. (2 Kings. 20: 2-5).

## **THE SECOND KEY ON THE RING IS: PEACE**

Tension binds you, but peace sets you free!

Every marriage definitively needs this key.

***If you have peace with God and with your fellow man, you have the Kingdom of God within you.***

## **THE THIRD KEY ON THE RING IS THE JOY IN THE HOLY GHOST!**

This joy cannot be stolen by anything, including persecution. After the Apostles were beaten we read the following in Acts 5: 41 “And they departed from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for His name!”

In Acts 16 we read about Paul and Silas who opened the prison bars with their singing. You can experience the same, when you use this key of God’s Kingdom in your life. No wonder that Nehemiah, in spite of pressure from his enemies, could call out in Neh. 8:10 “**The joy in the Lord is your strength**”. This joy is not even affected by a poor harvest. Hab. 3:17,18. (Please read this scripture.)

Do you possess: Righteousness? Peace? Joy in the Holy Ghost? If so, then you are in possession of the Kingdom of God.

## **KINGDOM LAWS**

In Matt. 5+6+7 we find the laws or the principles of the kingdom. Each kingdom has laws that must be strictly adhered to. God’s kingdom also has explicit laws.

### **WE FIND THE FOLLOWING LAWS OF THE KINGDOM:**

#### **1. *The Kingdom law concerning RECONCILIATION***

***Read Matt. 5: 21-26, and study it.***

#### **LET US CONSIDER A FEW QUESTIONS ABOUT RECONCILIATION:**

##### **What does reconciliation mean?**

It means to make peace. We need to be peacemakers, firstly with God and then with our fellowman. But don’t forget to make peace with yourself.

If God has forgiven you, you need to forgive yourself as well.

##### **When do I need to reconcile with my brother or sister?**

Matt. 5:23,24: If I am busy praying to God, and I am reminded that my brother or sister has anything against me!

##### **How do I reconcile with my brother?**

Matt. 18:15-17.

##### **How many times must I make peace?**

Matt. 18:21,22; Luke. 17:3,4

##### **Why do I need to make peace?**

If I do not make peace, God will give me over to the tormentors. Matt. 18.

I must make peace with others if I want peace between God and myself.

Luke. 11:4. Many people cannot move their mountains of problems, because they cannot forgive. Mark. 11: 22-26.

## **2. THE MARRIAGE LAW**

### **Matt. 5:27-32**

What is MARRIAGE? This is a union between one man and one woman, who makes a vow before God, to remain joined together until they are parted by death.

Anyway, God only created one woman for Adam! Marriage is an institution of God and it is a sacred matter. 1 Tim. 4:1-3, Heb. 13:4.

There are specific responsibilities in the marriage. Eph. 5:22-23, 1 Pet. 3:1-7.

## **3. The law of TAKING AN OATH.**

### **Matt 5:33-37**

This refers to taking a solemn Oath before God that a statement that you made is the absolute truth.

Examples from the Old Testament:

Gen. 21: 23+32 Abraham and Abimelech

Gen. 24: 24 Abraham and Eliezer

Gen. 47: 29-31 Jacob and Josef

God expects from us to be honest in our dealings with others.

Jesus said in Matt. 5:37: "but let your communication be Yea, yea and nay, nay: for whatsoever is more than this comes from evil".

Listen to what James says in the Amplified Bible. James 5: 12: "But above all things, my brothers, do not swear, either by heaven or earth or by any other oath; but let your yes be a simple YES, and your no, a simple NO, so that you may not sin and fall under condemnation".

## **4. The LAW OF RETALIATION**

**Matt. 5:36-45.** This refers to Reckoning or Payback.

## **5. The LAW OF ATTITUDE Matt.6:2,5,16**

In Philippians Paul teaches the following about attitudes:

Phil. 1:12-18

Paul had problems with the attitudes and motives of others, but look how special his attitude is when he calls out in verse 18: "What then? Notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence or in truth, Christ is preached; and I rejoice therein, yes and will rejoice!"

Paul also refers to the wonderful attitude of Jesus and encourages us to acquire this attitude for ourselves. Phil. 2:1-5

This Attitude includes:

Not being selfish

Not to seek vanity

To be humble

To value others higher than yourself

To see to the needs of others



**6. The LAW of CONCERN (Worry) Matt. 6:25-34**

When trouble comes our way there is a Kingdom law in us that tells us that we are more valued by God than anything he made (v.26-28). This law in us drives us to seek God's Kingdom. That is His will (v. 33)

**7. The LAW of GIVING**

It is better to give than to receive. Acts 20:35. The Dead Sea is dead because it only receives and has no outlet.

WHEN WE GIVE TO GOD, THE FOLLOWING PRINCIPLES APPLY:

Give willingly. Ex. 25:2,1; 1 Chron. 29:9

Give plenty and gladly. 2 Cor. 9:6,7

Give according to the measure that God blesses you. Deut. 16:17

Give your best. Mal. 1:8,13,14. (Read what the complaint against Israel was).

**8. The LAW of CONDEMNATION Matt. 7:1-5**

**TO CONDEMN MEANS:** judge without acquiring the necessary knowledge and proof.

**THE BIBLE FORBIDS US TO JUDGE.**

**THE KINGDOM OF GOD FORCES A WAY OPEN FOR ITSELF**

In Matt. 11:12 Jesus says:

**King James Translation** - "And from the days of John the Baptist until now the Kingdom of Heaven suffers violence, and the violent take it by force".

**The Living Bible** – "Since John the Baptist started preaching, until today, the new realm where God rules, is busy to break down every resistance, and people who concentrate and apply their strength, makes it their own."

HOW DID THE KINGDOM OF GOD FORCE A WAY OPEN FOR ITSELF, SINCE THE TIME OF JOHN THE BAPTIST?

In Matt. 3:1-12, John speaks and says: "Repent ye, for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand". Conversion and salvation is definitely necessary if one wants to enter the Kingdom of God. When conversion takes place, it is accompanied by "violence" because it is 180 degrees turn around in the individual's life.

The people came rushing from Judea and the surrounds to be baptized by John the Baptist. He baptized them while they confessed their sins. (v. 5,6). Yes, truly the Kingdom of God has forced a way into the hearts of these people.

**LOOK AT WHAT HAPPENS WHEN JESUS STARTS TO PREACH THE MESSAGE OF THE KINGDOM.**

**Matt. 4:17,23,24**

Miracles always take place where the Kingdom forces a way for himself. Even the demons must flee.

**Matt. 8:1-3.**

The leper collected all his strength and dared to come close to Jesus where he fell at the Master's feet. All lepers had to keep their distance, and stay away from other people. If they came close, they were stoned.

The bible compares leprosy to sin. If a person has fallen into sin, it truly takes effort to come back to God for cleansing.

**In Matt. 8:28-34**

We find the story of the demon who possessed men in Gergesenes (Gadara). God's Kingdom strikes the area with force! 2000 Pigs are destroyed! It is always the case: When God's Kingdom comes in a heart or a home, all unclean spirits flee.

**Matt. 9:2-7** This is about the lame man in Capernaum. It is violence to break open the roof of another man's house. What do we do to get people to Jesus? Will we be prepared to act so violently? Oh! I pray that the Kingdom of God will break through in houses and lives that need Him.

There is another example in **Matt. 9**, of how the Kingdom of God forces a way through. We read this in Matt. 9:20-22. The woman, who suffered from a flow of blood for twelve years, forced a way through the crowd to get to Jesus. She is but a sickly woman from all the blood that she had lost over a 12-year period, but in spite of it, she is determined to get to Jesus. The moment that she touched the hem of Jesus garment, she received her healing.

Are you sick? Are you in need? If you want something from God, you will have to apply all your strength to get to Jesus. No one should be allowed to stop you from getting a touch from God.

Come, let us believe that the Kingdom of God will visit our town or city, as was the case with Ephesus as is described in Acts 19. This was a city full of idols and sorcery, but just look what God did when His Kingdom forced a way through. (Read Acts 19:11-20).

OH! FOR VIOLENCE IN OUR SPIRIT:

- To be saved
- To receive healing
- To stop the attacks of the devil against our homes and marriages.

**If you desire a spiritual breakthrough in your life, there needs to be force and commitment in your Spirit. Decide now or never is the time for you to seek God with your whole heart!**

## **LAYING ON OF HANDS**

**The last commission that Jesus gave to His disciples is found in Mark 16:15-20.**

This instruction Jesus gave just before His ascension, to His Father in Heaven.

**In verses 17 and 18, Jesus called out:** “And these signs will follow those who believe; In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues;” “They will take up serpents; and if they drink anything deadly, it will by no means hurt them; **they will lay hands on the sick, and they will recover.**”

Right through the Bible we find that there are great blessings and power through the laying on of hands, in the name of the Lord. I have found through the years that in church services those that came forward for prayer and the laying on of hands received greater blessings than those who stayed sitting in the pews.

### **WHAT DOES THE BIBLE TEACH ABOUT THE LAYING ON OF HANDS?**

#### **1. THE LAYING ON OF HANDS WAS USED TO SEPARATE MEN AND WOMEN FOR THE SERVICE OF THE LORD.**

This is how the Levites was separated for God’s service. We read of this in **Numbers 8:10,11:** “So you shall bring the Levites before the Lord, and the children of Israel shall lay their hands on the Levites; and Aaron shall offer the Levites before the Lord like a wave offering from the children of Israel, that they may perform the work of the Lord.”

After the Levites purified themselves, they were literally moved before God as a wave offering, when hands were laid on them.

The first deacons in the New Testament were also dedicated in their ministry. We read of this in **Acts 6:1-7**

Paul and Barnabas had the same experience. **Acts 13:3**

#### **2. THE GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT CAN BE RECEIVED BY THE LAYING ON OF HANDS**

Paul writes the following to Timothy in **1 Timothy 4:14:** “Do not neglect the gift that is in you, which was given to you by prophecy with the laying on of the hands of the eldership.”

Further Paul writes in **2 Timothy 1:6:** “Therefore I remind you to stir up the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of hands.” In both these verses it clearly refers to the laying on of the hands when Timothy received the gift of the Holy Spirit.

Do not neglect the gifts in you, but stir it up. If you desire the fire of God to be rekindled in you, I encourage you to find an anointed man or women of God, and ask them to lay hands on you and pray that God will anoint you afresh with His Spirit. May God’s wonderful gifts be awakened within you.

After the Apostles in Jerusalem heard about the wonders taking place in Samaria, they found it essential to send John and Peter to Samaria, to go and pray for the believers to receive the Holy Spirit. That is what they did by praying and laying on of hands. We read about it in **Acts 8:14-17**.

Simon the sorcerer, was so impressed by what he saw that he offered them money, so that he too could have the power to lay hands on people with the same results. Instead he was rebuked. (**Acts 8:18-24**)

In **Acts 19:6**: Paul prayed for the men in Ephesus by the laying on of hands, and they received the Holy Spirit.

A PERSONAL QUESTION TO YOU: "HAVE YOU RECEIVED THE HOLY SPIRIT?"

The necessity to be filled with the Holy Spirit cannot be overstated

because: The Holy Spirit helps us to witness (**Acts 1:8**)

Helps us to pray (**Rom. 8:26**)

Leads us into all truth (**John 16:13**).

### 3. THE LAYING ON OF HANDS IS USED TO PRAY FOR THE SICK.

- Look at **Mark 16:18** again. Jesus often laid His hands on the sick.
- In **Matthew 8:4** we read that Jesus touched a man that had Leprosy and healed him.
- In **Matthew 8:15** Jesus touched Simon's mother-in-law and the fever left her.
- **Matthew 9:29,30** tells us that Jesus touched two blind men and they could see.
- In **Mark 7:32-35** Jesus took a deaf and dumb person away from the people, placed His fingers in his ears and on his tongue, and he was completely restored.
- **Luke 13:13**: tells us how Jesus laid His hands on a woman who for 18 years was bound by the devil. She was made completely whole.

I CHALLENGE YOU: COME, BECOME THE OUTSTRETCHED HANDS OF GOD, WHEN WE PRAY FOR THE SICK IN THE NAME OF JESUS WITH THE LAYING ON OF HANDS.

### THE POWER OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IS TRANSFERABLE BY THE LAYING ON OF HANDS.

One of the most outstanding examples of this in the Bible we found in **Numbers 27:18-20** Here we read that the power Moses received from God, was transferred to Joshua by the laying on of the hands of Moses.

In **Deuteronomy 34:9**: we read: "Now Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom, **for Moses had laid his hands on him**; so the children of Israel heeded him, and did as the Lord has commanded Moses." No wonder that we must not lay hands on anybody hastily.

On the other hand, we can be a tremendous blessing to each other by laying hands on people when you pray for them in the Name of the Lord.

*Lay your hands on your wife and child when you pray for them!*

# GODS TIMING

**We must understand and discern the times in which we are living.**

In being able to understand the times, we will be better equipped to know what we should do and how we can best redeem the time given to us.

## Introduction

Eph. 5:16 tells us that we are to “redeem the time because the days are evil.”

## **Time Defined.**

In the Scriptures we see words like times, seasons and opportune time  
It is important that we understand two fundamental different Greek words if we really want to capture a precise meaning of time.

**“Chronos”** The natural flow of time. Time as a measurement. Seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, months and years.

**“Kairos”** It is God’s *“opportune time”* in time

### **Foundational aspects of Kairos:**

“Kairos” is eternity’s plan within earthly time.

“Kairos” It is when God breaks through into the time of man.

## **UNDERSTANDING GOD’S TIMING IS ONE OF THE KEYS WE NEED WHEN MAKING DECISIONS**

### **Old Testament examples of Kairos.**

In I Chron.12:32 we read the words: *“The sons of Issachar who had understanding of the times.”*

- They understood the times that they lived in.
- This understanding enabled them to give direction to Israel as to what they should do.
- Israel was in a transition period when the kingdom of Saul was being turned over to David. The old were going out and the new needed to come in.

Esther 4:14 – Esther, the young Jewish girl who became queen of the Persian Empire. Through the providence of God, she was in a position to prevent the disappearing of her entire nation.

*Mordecai, her uncle, said: “Who knows whether you (Esther) have come to the kingdom for such a time as this?”*

### The “kairos” time in Moses’ life (Acts 7:17-36)

- V.17 *“But when the time of the promise drew near”* (God’s promise to set His people free was given long before Moses was born.)
- V.20 *“At this time Moses was born”* (Your birth was a “kairos” time)
- V.23 *“Now when he was forty years old”* (This was when he killed a man. Sometimes a negative thing in our lives can also be a “kairos” time in our lives.) (Rom.8:28)
- V.30 *“And when forty years had passed”* (God called Moses in Ex. 3)

## **UNDERSTANDING GOD'S TIME OF VISITATION IS IMPORTANT.**

- ◆ **Jesus visited Jerusalem on a donkey.**
- ◆ **Everybody was happy, except the Pharisees that asked Jesus to rebuke the people, not to praise Him (He said the stones would)**
- ◆ **Then Jesus wept and said: “If you had known...the things that would give you peace...but you did not know the time of your visitation.” (Luke 19:42,44)**

### Jesus understood the concept of Kairos.

- In John 7:6,7 “Then Jesus said to them, My time (“kairos”) has not yet come, but your time (“chronos”) is always ready.”(Living Bible: ‘you can go anytime and it will make no difference’)”You go up to this feast, I am not yet going up to the feast, for My time (“My kairos time”) has not yet fully come.”
- Romans 5:6 “For while we were yet sinners, at the right time (kairos) Christ died for us.”
- Galatians 4:4 “But when the fullness of time (kairos) had come, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law.”
- Paul had a “kairos” time in Acts 9 and again 10 years later when he was sent by his church as a Missionary (Acts 13:4)
- The lame man at Bethesda (John 5) finally had his “kairos” time

### **Kairos and Nations.**

#### **Jerusalem – Luke 19:41-44**

The Reason that this judgment would come on Jerusalem was:  
“because you did not know the time (kairos) of your visitation.”

***It is so evident from the pages of history that nations have special times of visitation where special opportunities present themselves.***

In praying to the “Lord of the Harvest” we must anticipate the harvest becoming ready. When we see this opportunity, we must be ready to focus on getting the harvest in. In the natural when it’s harvest time all attention, time and resources are harnessed for the purpose of not losing it! This is how the Church redeems the time. In other words: “Where God works, you and I should also work. God is the worker, and we are just the co-workers”.

**Japan** – At the end of World War II, she lay in waste and her emperor had been deposed of. Douglas McArthur requested that the West would send missionaries as soon as they can. About 16 responded and today less than 1% of Japan is Evangelical.

**China** – In 1271, Nicolo Polo (the father of Marco Polo) visited the Kublai Khan (ruler of) China, India and the East. He was interested in Christianity and asked him to send 100 Missionaries. He and all his leaders would be baptized. But 30 years later three missionaries were sent – too little and too late. **Look at China today!!**

**The “Jesus” movement began in the latter part of the sixties on the West Coast of America.** Churches were praying for a revival to break out among the young people. God began to move and the revival made the front page of major news publications. In this “*kairos*” time the leaders of the Western Church in America were born.

**The former Communist nations** – We are sure that the collapse of communism was not the results of political pressure but rather the invasion of God into this special moment of time!

We need to carefully ask ourselves **where** God is moving and then place ourselves at His disposal.

### **Kairos and You.**

You must realize that you are not an accident. You have been born at this precise moment of time in order to lay hold of the special opportunities that this time is presenting.

When God called you to repentance, He called you to a ongoing **purpose**.

**I Peter 5:6** says that if we humble ourselves under the mighty hand of God, He will exalt us in due time (Kairos).

**Galatians 6:9** tells us “To not be weary in well doing; for in due season (Kairos) we shall reap, if we faint not”.

### **Attributes of people that knows God’s destiny for their life.**

**Self worth** - It matters that I am alive.

**Honor** – I will sacrifice for truth and what I’m called to do.

**Uniqueness** – God carefully made me so that I may serve Him.

**Purpose** – I know why I am here.

**Leadership** – I can withstand trials because of my destiny.

**Faith** – God desires to use me.

**Historical vision** – I’m here at this time in history to service His purposes for my generation.

**Generational thinking** – What He has put in me the next generation needs so that they may do greater things.

### **Kairos and the Church.**

#### **WE SHOULD, AS THE CHURCH, GIVE ANSWERS TO THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:**

- A. Do we understand that God has a “*kairos*” time for us?
- B. Do we really view ourselves as light and salt?
- C. Will corporate prayer heal a nation and influence history?
- D. Are we planning to influence communities for God?
- E. Is the next generation being equipped for strategic leadership in all areas of life?

## **BE READY TO MOVE TO THE NEXT STAGE**

*When you realise that it is your “kairos” time be ready to make the move.*

### **Joshua 1 Israel came to their “kairos” time !**

- Verse 2: “Moses My servant is dead. Now therefore, arise, go over this Jordan, you and all this people, to the land which I am giving to them.”  
**DON'T MISS THIS !**  
When you come to your “kairos” time there will be difficult decision to take.
- Israel had to cross the Jordan River that was in flood! (Josh.3:15)
- They had to move in **faith** (Josh.1:3)
- Israel had to be flexible. God gave them a **three day time** (Josh.1:11)
- They had to be **strong and of good courage** (Josh.1:6,7)
- God’s Word should always be **in their mouth** (Josh.1:8)  
**Think of Rom.10:8**
- Always move with the **peace of the Lord in your heart** (Josh.1;9)  
**Col.3:15**



# ANGELS

- 108 Times Angels are mentioned in the Old Testament and 160 times in the New Testament. Still there are people, like the Sadducees, that deny their existence, as we read in Acts 23:8 *“For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection – and no angel or spirit...”*
- There are a great many Angels.  
Dan. 7:10 *“Ten thousand times ten thousand”* (one billion)  
Matt. 26:53 (Jesus praying in Gethsemane) *“Or do you think that I cannot now pray to My Father, and He will provide Me with more than twelve legions of angels?”* (one legion is 6,000)  
Luke 2:13 Talks of a multitudes of angels
- Angels were created by God. Col. 1:16 *“For by Him all things were created that are in **heaven** and that are on **earth**.”*
- Angels may not be worshipped.  
Rev. 19:10 *“And I (John) fell at his feet to worship him (an angel) But he said to me. ‘See that you do not do that’ I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren who have the testimony of Jesus. Worship God!”*  
(Also read Rev. 22:8,9)

## Some characteristics of Angels

- (1) They possess power 2 Thes. 1:7 *“His mighty angels”*  
2 Pet. 2:11 *“Angels, who are greater in power and might.”*
- (2) They do not marry or die  
Matt. 22:30 *“For in the resurrection they (man and wife) neither marry nor are given in marriage but are like angels of God in heaven.”* Also read Luke 20:35
- (3) They are not omniscient (knowing everything)  
Mark 13:32 (Of His second coming Jesus said) *“But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven...”*

## There are different kind of Angels

- (1) The Angel of the Lord (Jesus in the Old Testament)
  - Gen. 16:7 He appeared to Hagar in the wilderness
  - Gen. 22:11 He met with Abraham when he had to offer Isaac
  - Gen. 32:24-30 He wrestled with Jacob
  - Ex. 3:1,2 He appeared to Moses in a burning bush
  - Ex. 23:20-23 He was always going before Israel in the wilderness
  - In Ex. 32:34 God says: *“Behold, My Angel shall go before you.”*
- (2) Michael (The Army General)  
Dan. 10:10 -21 Michael helped Daniel in his spiritual war  
Dan. 12:1 *“In that time Michael shall stand up, the great prince who stands watch over the sons of your people.”*  
Jude v. 9 *“...Michael the archangel...”*

Rev. 12:7-9 *“And war broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels fought with the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought, but they did not prevail, nor was a place found for them in heaven any longer. So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the devil and satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.”*

- (3) Gabriel (Messenger) Luke 1:19,26-38; Dan. 9:21-23; Dan.10 :12,13
- (4) Cherubim Gen. 3 :24 ; Ex. 37 :7-9
- (5) Seraphim (They had six wings) Isa. 6:2

### **Fallen Angels**

- They supported the devil when he stood up against God  
Is.14:12-15; Ezek. 28:11;  
Luke 10:18; 2 Pet. 2:4; Jude v.6
- These fallen angels are the demons today Rev.12:7
- Paul refers to them in Eph. 6
- The hell is prepared for them. Matt.25:41
- The children of God will judge these angels 1 Cor. 6:3

### **The work of God’s Angels**

- God send them out *“to minister to those who will inherit salvation”*  
Heb. 1:13,14
- Strengthen God’s people 1 Kings 19:5-8; Matt. 4:11; Luke 22:43.  
Acts 27:23
- Protect Ps. 91:11,12; Matt. 18:10; 2 Kings 6:15,16; Gen. 19:11.  
Matt. 26:53.
- Save Dan.6:22; Acts 5:19; 12:8-11
- Reveal Luke 1 :11-19
- Tell God’s people what to do Matt.2:13,19,20; Acts 8:26; 10:3-6
- Carry the believers to Paradise Luke 16:22
- With the second coming of Christ, they will gather God’s people  
Matt. 13:39-50; 24:31; 25:31,32; 2 Thes. 1:7,8
- Conduct God’s judgment. Gen. 18:2-8; 19:1 Acts 12:23

## THE FATHER-HEART OF GOD

**Ps 68:5** “A **father** of the fatherless, a defender of widows, Is God in His holy habitation.”

The word “**father**” is in Hebrew a very simple word ‘**ab**’

The Aramaic form is “*abba*” meaning “*daddy*”

Jesus prayed in Gethsemane (**Mark 14:36**) “*Abba, Father, all things are possible for You, Take this cup away from Me; nevertheless, not what I will, but what you will.*”

**Rom.8:15** “For you did not receive the spirit of bondage again to fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption by whom we cry out, “*Abba, Father*”

Can you also call Him “Daddy” ?

Negative childhood experience is not the only factor that can hold us back in our understanding of God as Father. Many people experience an emotional or mental block when they try to call God “*Father*” because they do not know Him *personally*. (Floyd McClung, Jnr)

Some find it difficult to call God “Pappa” or “Father” because of respect. They will address Him as “Thou”

Some of the most common hindrances in our approach to the Father are emotional wounds.

### ALWAYS REMEMBER: HE IS OUR FATHER IN HEAVEN

**Matt.6:9** “Our Father in heaven, hallowed be Your Name” ( Matt.7:11)

**Matt.23:9** “Do not call anyone on earth your father; for One is your Father, He who is in heaven.” (This was because the Scribes and Pharisees wanted people to call them: “*Rabbi, Rabbi*” Matt.23:.6,7)

**Creator** A father is one who imparts life after his nature to his beloved children. This is what God did for us

“For in Him we live, and move, and have our being....for we are also His offspring.” (**Acts 17:28**)

“But now, O Lord, You are our Father; we are the clay, and You are our potter; and all we are the work of Your hand.” (**Isa. 64:8**)

“Have we not all one Father? Has not one God created us?” (**Mal.2:10**)

Paul said to the wise men in Athens “And He has made from one blood every nation of men to dwell on all the face of the earth” (**Acts 17:26**)

**Protector** God protects, guards and defends His children

“How precious is Thy steadfast love, O God! The children of men take refuge in the shadow of Thy wings.” (**Ps. 36:7**) **According to Ps.91 we are covered**

**Provider** God lovingly anticipates and provides for His children’s need  
“Therefore do not worry, saying ‘What shall we eat? or, what shall we drink? or, what shall we wear?....For your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things.’” (**Matt. 6:31-32**)

- **Luke 11:13** *“If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will the heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him.”*
- God provides, but our problem is that we want to stay in the place where He provided for us. Elijah enjoyed the brook Cherith. God had to let it dry up, before He could move him to the next step in his life (**1 Kings 17:6,7**)

**Instructor** God guides, directs and instructs His children  
*“Hear, my children, the instruction of a father, and give attention to know understanding” (Prov. 4:1)*  
*“For whom the Lord loves He corrects. Just as a father the son in whom he delights.” (Prov. 3:12)*

**Comforter** God comforts His children and encourages them to move on  
*“Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies and God of all comfort, who comforts us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort those who are in any trouble, with the comfort with which we ourselves are comforted by God.” (2 Cor. 1:3,4)*

## **GOD’S HEART IS**

**WORSHIP** **John 4:23, 24** *“The true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth; for the Father is seeking such to worship Him. God is Spirit and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth”*

The word **“Worshipper”** means **“an intensive admirer”** ***Is this the description of your life?***

Because Gods heart is “Worship” we should live a life of worshipping Him

Why must we worship God? **Scripture Ps.103:1-12**

- Because He has forgiven us (v.3,12)
- Because He heals us
- Because He redeems us from hell (v.4) Read Col.1:13
- Because it is only the Lord that can satisfy our souls (v.5)
- V.8,9 (Living Bible) *“He is merciful and tender towards those who don’t deserve it. He is slow to get angry and full of kindness and love. He never bears a grudge, nor remains angry forever.”*

## **Turn to Psalm 150**

Where must we praise God? (v.1)

Why must God be praised? (v. 2)

With what can we praise God? (v.3-5)

Who must praise God? (v.6)

## **GOD’S HEART IS**

**COMMUNION** What we should have is: *“Romance with the King”*  
It is important to seek God for Himself and not for the things He can give us. Understand **Matt.6:33** correctly

Our time with God must be our highest priority in our lives.  
We will find fullness of joy in His presence  
The Lord speaks of us coming wholeheartedly to Him so we can fully experience Him. The following are five aspects of what God requires of us in our approach to Him:

- (1) Make Me your greatest treasure so that I can give Myself to you (Mark.12:30)
- (2) Search for Me with your whole heart so I can reveal Myself to you. (Jer.29:13)
- (3) Trust Me with your whole heart so I can guide your steps. (Prov.3:5)
- (4) Praise Me with your whole heart so I can bless you with My presence. (Ps.9:1)
- (5) Return to Me with your whole heart so I can be compassionate and bless you. (Joel 2:12)

**Phil. 3:10,11** *“that I may **know Him** and the power of His resurrection, and the fellowship of His sufferings, being conformed to His death, if, by any means, I may attain to the resurrection from the dead.”*

*This “**know him**” in Greek is “ginosko” having the same meaning as intimate relationship as in marriage. The Hebrew counterpart is “yada” and is used in Gen.4:1 when Adam and Eve’s first son was born. “Now Adam **knew** (“yada”) Eve his wife, and she conceived and bore Cain.”*

GOD WANTS US TO HAVE A VERY CLOSE WALK WITH HIM

### **GOD’S HEART IS TO FORGIVE**

God forgives His children’s faults and failures  
*“For the Lord is merciful and gracious. Slow to anger, and abounding in mercy. As far as the east is from the west, so far has He removed our transgressions from us. As a father pities his children, so the Lord pities those who fear Him.” (Ps. 103:8,12,13)*

The first thing we must do is, we must ask God to forgive us  
**Let’s read 1 John 1:7-9**

- John wrote this to believers (“we” and “us” 32 times in 10 verses!)

The second thing we must do is forgive ourselves  
**Remember: Confessed sins are forgiven sin**

- Col. 2:13,14
- Ps. 103:12 (Where is East and where is West ?)
- Micah 7:19 (In the depths of the sea)
- Jer.31:34 (He will not remember our sins)

What happens when I sin again? 1 John 2:1

The third thing we must do is to forgive others

Luke 11:4 “Forgive us our sins, for we also forgive everyone who sins against us.”

You will never move your “mountains” if you cannot forgive  
(Mark. 11:23-26)

- What happens when I forgive?  
I unlock spiritual doors of the person and for myself
- The main reason why I forgive is not that others deserve it, but because I want to be free. (Luke 6:37)
- And if I do not forgive ?

**Then you must read Matt. 18:15-35**

## **GOD’S HEART IS**

**FOR THE LOST** He is the father we read of in Luke 15

- The father loved his son enough to let him leave home
- The father loved his son so deeply that he waited for him to return back home
- The father loved his son so much that when he did return home he did not condemn him. We read that the father ran to meet him

**1 Tim.2:4** “God desires all men to be saved and come to the knowledge of truth.”

*Jesus told a story that can give us a glimpse of the Father heart of God. It’s the story we call the prodigal son. You’ve probably heard it many times, how the son rebelled and dishonored his father, and how the father, in spite of it all, received him home with joy when he repented. But there’s one phrase in it I want to draw your attention to today. It’s this one: ‘But when the prodigal son was yet a great way off, his father saw him.’ That phrase gives such a moving glimpse of the heart of that loving father. It tells us that even before his boy had repented, even during those days when he was up to his eyebrows in sin, that father was watching for him, longing for him to come home.*

*Every morning he scanned the horizon, hoping to see the silhouette of his returning son. And the last thing every night, he’d look again...straining his eyes in hope. His son was constantly on his mind, and his heart was always full of love for him. The kind of gut-wrenching love that, on the day his son came home, drove that father to run to him and kiss him.” (Kenneth Copeland – Faith to Faith)*

## GOD'S HEART IS

### MISSIONS

The Bible is a Missionary Book

- I. The great Commission is not the great suggestion  
Matt.28:19
- II. Acts 1:8 is to reach the whole world
  - (1) Jerusalem is where we stay
  - (2) Judea is our region
  - (3) Samaria is where you do not want to go
  - (4) The ends of the world (all over)

If we don't want to do what is written in Acts 1:8, God may allow what happened to the first church in Acts 8:1

## GOD'S HEART IS

### LOVE

**John 3:16** "For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life."

**Romans 5:8** "But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were still sinners, Christ died for us."

**Eph.2:4,5** "But God, who is rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (by grace you have been saved)"

#### **1 John 4:7-21**

- Everyone who loves is born of God
- He who does not love does not know God
- God is love (He does not have it, He is it)
- "In this is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the propitiation for our sins" (v.10)
- That why we should love each other
- If we love one another, God will abide in us
- There is no fear in love
- "He who fears has not been made perfect in love" (v.18)
- If you hate your brother you cannot love God (v.20)

## GOD'S HEART IS GROWTH

**1 Cor.3:5-7**

**Eph.4:11-15** Ministries was given to the Church to help us grow to spiritual maturity

**If the ministry you are doing for God does not help you to grow, you are in the wrong ministry**

GOD'S HEART IS GROWTH

**IT IS GOD WHO BRINGS GROWTH**

**1 Cor. 3:1-7** "And I, brethren, could not speak to you as to spiritual people but as to carnal, as to babes in Christ. I fed you with milk and

not with solid food; for until now you were not able to receive it and even now you are still not able; for you are still carnal. For where there are **envy, strife** and **divisions** among you, are you not carnal and behaving like mere men? For when one says, "I am of Paul" and another, "I am of Apollos", are you not carnal? Who then is Paul, and who is Apollos, but ministers through whom you believed, as the Lord gave to each one? I planted, Apollos watered, but God gave the increase. So then neither he who plants is anything, nor he who waters, but God who gives, the increase."

Who **plants** and who **cares**? (God or me?)

Who lays hands on the sick?

**Mark 16:18** "They shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover"

**Matthew 10:8** "Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: Freely ye have received, freely give"

## **TWO THINGS ARE NECESSARY FOR GROWTH**

(a) Planting must take place.

This is to **EVANGELISE**

**Mark 16:20** In the Living Bible: "And the disciples went everywhere preaching, and the Lord was with them and confirmed what they said by the miracles that followed their messages"

(b) Caring what we planted.

- God brings growth, but we plant and care.
- Every Christian must do one of these or both
- We must take care of every new believer. The complaint against the shepherd in the old testament is also against the church of today.

**Ezekiel 34:4** "The weak you have not strengthened, nor have you healed those who were sick, nor bound up the broken, nor brought back what was driven away, nor sought what was lost; but with force and cruelty you have ruled them"

## **THERE ARE 3 THINGS THAT HINDER GROWTH (1 Cor. 3:3)**

- **Envy** even spiritual envy
- **Strife**  
**1 Tim. 3:3** "not given to wine, not violent, not greedy, for money, but gentle, not quarrelsome, not covetous;"  
**2 Tim. 2:24** "And a servant of the Lord must not quarrel but be gentle to all, able to teach, patient"
- **Division**

## **GROWTH IS THE ONLY EVIDENCE OF A HEALTHY LIFE.**

No furniture can grow it just looks nice

- There is a lot of "**furniture**" in the church!



- God can give life as He did when the rod of Aaron brought forth fruit. (**Num. 17:8**)  
The rod of Aaron had sprouted and put forth buds, had produced blossoms and yielded ripe almonds”
- A. “rod” was token of authority. God can restore yours.

**There are 3 main components for growth.**

- 1, The root that supports the plant. This we cannot see.  
But this is the most important part of the plant!
- 2, The stem and leaves that we can see
3. The fruit we can enjoy. Fruit was never meant to be a decoration.

**WHAT CAN YOU AND I DO TO PROMOTE GROWTH IN OUR’SSELVES AND THE CHURCH?**

- 1, Establish **God’s order** in your home  
Remember “Church” begins in your home.
  - God’s order (His rules) works like this:  
**God** first, then the **husband**, then the **wife**, followed by the **children**, the **church**, your **work** etc.
  - Somehow Moses forgot how it worked and almost died.  
Because he did not circumcise his son!  
Read **Ex. 4:24-26**
2. Get your **relationship** right with God.  
(Spend time with His Word and in prayer.)
  - That is your main calling
  - No Gratitude = No Praise
  - No Praise = No Worship
  - No Worship = No Relationship
3. Establish **your Vision** in your heart and be certain of what God called you to do.  
**Hab. 2:2** “Write the Vision and make it plain on tablets, that he may run who reads it”  
**Prov. 29:18** No vision, the people perish.  
Spanish Bible: “**They become like wild horses**”  
**YOUR VISION MUST BE:**  
**(a)Realistic (b)Time bound (c)Measurable**

# THE CHARACTER and NATURE OF GOD

The **character** of a person consists of all the qualities they have that make them distinct from other people.

God's character makes Him distinct from everyone else  
Someone's **nature** is their character, which they show by the way they behave. That's why God is so different than man. His nature makes Him God.

## GOD IS CREATOR OF THIS UNIVERSE

Gen.1:1 "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth."

The simple statement that God created the heavens and the earth is one of the most challenging concepts. The vast galaxy we live in is spinning at the incredible speed of 490,000 miles per hour.

Because God is love, that is why He chose to create. Love is best expressed towards something or somebody else – so God created the world and people as an expression of His love.

When Paul visited the Areopagus ("Hill of Ares" or "Mars Hill") in Athens he addressed the philosophers in telling them about the character and nature of his God.

**Acts 17:22-31** He started like this: "Men of Athens, I perceive that in all things you are very religious; for as I was passing through and considering the objects of your worship, I even found an altar with this inscription: 'TO THE UNKNOWN GOD' Therefore, the One whom you worship without knowing, Him I proclaim to you God, who made the world and everything in it **(proclaiming His power)** since He is Lord of heaven and earth **(proclaiming His Godliness)** does not dwell in temples made with hands. Nor is He worshiped with men's hands, as though he needed anything, since He gives to all life, breath, and all things. **(proclaiming that He is the life-giver)** And He has made from one blood every nation of men to dwell on all the face of the earth, and has determined their preappointed times and boundaries of their dwellings **(proclaiming His authority over all nations)** so that they should seek the Lord, in the hope that they might grope ("trying your best to take hold off") for Him and find Him though He is not far from each one of us; for in Him we live and move and have our being, as also some of your own poets have said, 'For we are also His offspring'.....He has appointed a day on which He will judge the world in righteousness **(proclaiming that God is the Judge)** by the Man whom He has ordained. He has given assurance of this to all by raising Him from the dead." **(proclaiming that Jesus, God's Son, rose from death)**

TELLING OTHERS ABOUT YOUR GOD, YOU MUST START AT A POINT OF AGREEMENT. WE LIVE IN A "CHRISTIAN" SOCIETY, BUT MANY

DON'T KNOW GOD. PROCLAIM HIM TO THEM. THEN TAKE THOSE THAT LISTEN TO YOU, TO JESUS CHRIST.

**I WANT TO PROCLAIM THAT: "GOD IS ALL POWERFUL, ALL KNOWING AND ALL PRESENT"**

GOD IS OMNIPOTENT (God is all-powerful)

- He was able to create the world out of nothing.
- **Luke 1:37 "For with God nothing will be impossible"**

GOD IS OMNIPRESENT (God is everywhere present)

4. Is it possible for God to be working around you and you not see it?
5. Think of what happened with Elisha and his servant in 2 Kings 6  
Elisha saw what God was doing around them while his servant could not see God at work!
6. Jesus wept over Jerusalem because they could not see God working.  
He said in Luke 19:42 *"If you, even you, had only known on this day what would bring you peace – but now it is hidden from your eyes."*

Deut. 4:39 *"Therefore know this day, and consider it in your heart, that the Lord Himself is God in heaven above and on the earth beneath; there is no other."* God is everywhere!

Ps.139:7,8 (David) *"Where can I go from Your Spirit? Or where can I flee from Your presence? If I ascend into heaven, You are there; If I make my bed in hell, behold, You are there."*

Is.66:1 *"Thus says the Lord: Heaven is My throne, and earth is My footstool."*

Jer.23:24 *"Can anyone hide himself in secret places, so I shall not see him? says the Lord."*

GOD IS OMNISCIENT (God knows everything; past, present and future)

Job 31:4 *"Does He not see my ways, and count all my steps?"*

Ps.147:5 *"Great is our Lord and mighty in power; His understanding is infinite"*  
(meaning: without borders)

1 John 3:20 *"God is greater than our heart and knows all things."*

## **WE BELIEVE IN A TRI-UNE GOD**

We don't believe in "three Gods" but in God the Father; God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. God revealed Himself as FATHER, SON and HOLY SPIRIT

- When He decided to create the human race, He revealed Himself as a God with more than one personality. Gen.1:26 *"Let Us make man, in Our image, according to Our likeness."* (God's not speaking to angels)
- When Jesus was baptised in the Jordan river, we also find that the trinity revealed Himself when the Holy Spirit came on Jesus and the Father spoke from heaven (Matt.3:13-17)
- When Paul gave his final greetings to the church in Corinth, he wrote these words in 2 Co.13:14 *The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit be with you all. Amen."*
- In 1 John 5:7 we read: *"For there are three that bear witness in heaven: the Father, the Word, (to understand who this is read John.1:1, 14) and the Holy Spirit; and these three are one."* (Read 1 John 5:6 to 8)

## **THE NATURE OF GOD IS LOVE**

God does not “have” love, but God “IS” LOVE

You see if you “have” love you can lose it, but if you “are” love you cannot lose it.

Jer.31:3 *“Yes, I have loved you with an everlasting love; therefore, with loving kindness I have drawn you.”*

This was a prophecy through Jeremiah to Israel in their captivity in Babylon telling them that God is a God of “second chances”

- Israel was taken in captivity because they did not keep the Sabbath year according to Lev.25:1-5 (Also read: 2 Chon.36:20,21)
- But in Jer.29:10,11 God said: *“For thus says the Lord: After seventy years are completed at Babylon, I will visit you and perform My good word toward you, and cause you to return to this place. For I know the thoughts I think toward you, (“My revised plan”) says the Lord, thoughts of peace and not of evil, to give you a future and a hope.”*
- Always remember: God’s “revised” plan is also a “perfect” plan, because He is a Perfect God!

**John 3:16** *“God so loved the world that He gave.....”*

**1 John 4:9,16** *“In this the love of God was manifested toward us, that God has sent His only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through Him.....”*

*God is love, and he who abides in love abides in God, and God in him.”*

**Rom. 11:29 Living Bible:** *“For God’s gifts and His call can never be withdrawn, He will never go back on His promises.”*

***After these words Paul breaks through in praise to his God! v.33-36***

## **GOD WANTS TO SPEAK TO US THROUGH HIS WORD**

The Bible is the Master Success Handbook

Your most difficult life habit will be reading the Word of God every morning of your life.

### ***Rewards of reading the Word of God***

- *The Word of God unleashes your very life within you* John 6:63 “the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life.”
- *The Word of God cleanses* “Now you are clean through the Word which I have spoken unto you.” (John 15:3)(Ps. 119:9)
- *The Word of God corrects* 2 Tim.3:16 “All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction”
- *The Word of God keeps me from falling* Ps 119:11 “Your word I have hidden in mine heart, that I might not sin against You”
- *The Word of God drives back the darkness* “The entrance of Your Words gives light” (Ps 119:130)
- *The Word of God brings Joy* “These things I have spoken to you, that My joy may remain in you, and that your joy may be full.” (John 15:11)

### Helpful hints in reading the Word of God

- *Read it daily. What you do daily determines what you become permanently*
- *Read it prayerfully until it speaks to you!*
- *Read it joyfully*
- *Mark the Bible as you read it*

### GOD'S GUIDANCE

God guided Israel with a cloud through the wilderness  
Today He guides us through His Holy Spirit (John 16:13)  
*Rom. 8:14 "For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, these are sons of God."*

### **A WRONG PATTERN FOR GUIDANCE**

- "Lord stop me if I am wrong and bless me if I am right."
- "Lord, close the door if this is the wrong one. I will just keep on walking"

### **WE NEED "THREE LIGHTS IN A ROW"**

1. The Word of the Lord
2. Circumstances
3. Inner Peace

### WHEN GOD GUIDES:

- You will know that it is the correct way, but you will not always "see" the whole way clearly. That is why we need to walk by faith.
- Of Abraham we read:  
***Gen. 12:1 "Go to the land I will show you"***  
Then in Heb. 11:8 we read: "By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called to go out of the place which he would receive as an inheritance.  
***And he went out, not knowing where he was going."***

### WHEN GOD SPEAKS:

- He has a purpose in mind for your life
- When He speaks you need to respond

### WHAT HAPPENS WHEN GOD IS "SILENT?"

- (b) Do you understand this?
- (c) If this happens check your live if there is any sin and confess it.
- (d) If there is no sin, just keep on trusting and serving God. The answer will come at God's time!

### GOD IS THE WORKER AND WE ARE THE CO-WORKERS

Jesus watched what His Father was doing and then joined Him. (John 5:19)  
God tries to get our attention by revealing where He is at work.  
Then we say to ourselves: "*I don't know if God wants me to get involved. I better pray about it.*" By taking too much time deciding to join God we miss opportunities.

If you are going to join God in His work, you need to know where God is working. **Someone said: “Look where God is working and join Him.”** When God starts to do something in this world, He takes the initiative to talk to somebody. He can do anything without us but he chooses to work through us.

- When God was about to destroy the world with a flood He spoke to Noah (Gen.6:5-14)
- Before God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah he spoke to Abraham (Gen.18:16-21; 19:13)
- The moment God speaks to you is the very moment God wants you to respond to Him. Why do we keep God waiting for an answer?
- The moment God speaks to you is God’s timing, that is why He choose to speak when He does.

### **True or False:**

- God speaks to me when He has a purpose in mind for my life
- When God speaks to me, I can take plenty of time deciding when and how I should respond
- When God speaks to me, I must respond immediately by adjusting my life to Him, His purposes and His ways.
- The moment God speaks it is His timing

When God gives you an assignment and you don’t do what He said, He won’t give you a totally new one and ignore the first one He gave.

Compare: Jonah 1:1,2 with Jonah 3:1,2 (You will see it was the same message !)

### **GOD’S NATURE IS TO FELLOWSHIP WITH US**

God created the first man and women, Adam and Eve, for fellowship  
God’s character is to fellowship. Do not disappoint Him in this!

- How do you feel when you talk to God?
- If you feel uneasy in God’s presence, why do you feel like this?
- What is especially meaningful in God’s presence for you?

One of the best Scriptures to underline where God met with a person, we find in Ex.33. In verse 11 we read: “*So the Lord spoke to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend.*” This was the time when God showed His glory to Moses. (Read: Ex.33:7-23)

Enoch was also a man that “*walked with God*” Gen.5:22  
(Noah also – Gen.6:9)

### **GOD IS FAITHFUL**

Deut.7:9 “*Therefore know that the Lord your God, He is God, the faithful God who keeps covenant and mercy for a thousand generations with those who love Him and keep His commandments.*”

1 Kings 8:56 “*There has not failed one word of all His good promise.*”

Heb. 6:18 “*it is impossible for God to lie.*”

**YES, YOU AND I CAN CALL HIM “FATHER”**

## **GOD IS HOLY**

Isaiah said that the angels cried out before God's throne with these words written down in Is.6:3 *"Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of hosts; the whole earth is full of His glory."*

And John saw in his vision on Patmos what the angels were doing in heaven:  
*"And they do not rest day or night, saying: Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, who was and is and is to come."*

This is why God says to us: *"Be holy, for I am holy."* (1 Pet.4:16)

## **GOD IS LIGHT**

Because God is "Light" He could say *"Let there be light"*

Ps.27:1 *"The Lord is my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear?"*

John 1:4 *"In Him was life, and the life was the light of men."*

John 8:12 *"Then Jesus spoke to them again, saying: I am the light of the world. He who follows Me shall not walk in darkness but have the light of life."*

Concerning the new Jerusalem John saw: *"The city had no need of the sun or of the moon to shine in it, for the glory of God illuminated it. The Lamb is its light. (Rev.21:23)*

## **GOD'S CHARACTER AND NATURE IS THAT HE WANTS YOU AND ME TO EXPERIENCE WHAT IS WRITTEN IN EPHESIANS CHAPTER ONE**

- He wants to *"bless us with spiritual blessing"* (v.3)
- He wants to forgive us all our sins (v.7)
- He wants to give us our inheritance in Him (v.11)
- He wants to "seal" us with His Holy Spirit (v.13,14)

Ephesians can be divided into three parts:

- (1) Our POSITION in Christ
- (2) Our WALK in the Lord
- (3) Our WEAPONS

## **NAMES OF GOD**

In the Bible God took the initiative to reveal Himself to people by experience. Frequently when God revealed Himself to a person, that person gave God a new name or described Him in a new way.

*For the Hebrew, a person's name represented his character and described his nature.*

This is why we find new names or titles for God following an event where somebody experienced God.

Biblical names, titles, and descriptions of God identify how Bible characters personally, came to know God. The Scripture is a record of God's revelation of Himself to man.

**Each name for God is a part of that revelation.**

- Joshua and the Israelites were fighting the Amalekites. Moses was overseeing the battle from a nearby mountain. While he held his hands up to God, the Israelites were victorious. When he let his hands down, they began to lose. God defeated the Amalekites through Israel that day. Moses built an altar and gave it the name: *“The Lord is my Banner”* A banner was carried in front of an army to indicate who it represented
- The same thing happened in Gen.22:1-18 when God provided a offering in the place of Isaac. After this great experience Abraham gave God a name, and that was *“God is my Provider”*

**HEBREW NAMES FOR GOD**

Jehovah – Nissi	The Lord is my Banner
Jehovah – Jireh	God is my Provider
Jehovah – Shalom	The Lord my Peace
Jehovah – Shammah	The Lord is There
Jehovah – Tsidkenu	The Lord our Righteousness

Read the following list of names, titles and descriptions of God.

Circle those that describe God in ways you have personally experienced Him

My Advocate (Job 16:19)	Bread of Life (John 6:35)
Comforter in sorrow (Jer.8:18)	Counsellor (Isa. 9:6)
Defender of widows (Ps.68:5)	My friend (Job.16:20)
God who avenges me (Ps.18:47)	My hiding place (Ps.32:7)
My light (John 8:12)	Our peace (Eph.2:14)
The good Shepherd (John 10:11)	My support (2 Sam.22:19)

**GOD IS A GOD OF GROWTH**

God is a progressive God that is why we can never stagnate if we follow God. He wants His church to grow spiritually

If the ministry God has given you does not help you to grow spiritually, you are in the wrong ministry. Get out of the wrong ministry you are in now and let God’s Spirit help you discover what He wants you to do for Him! **Read Eph.4:11-16**



## **THE 4 PILLARS OF MARRIAGE**

### **Let us study Ephesians 5:22-33**

**v. 22 “Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the Lord.”**

Paul gives advice to the church concerning marriage and his first words is addressed to the woman.

Why did he do that? Because woman want to know first.

Then he touches the most difficult subject for anyone to hear, and that is: “submit” The Collins Dictionary says this about the word “submissive” “If you are submissive, you obey someone without arguing.”

**v. 23 “For the husband is head of the wife, as also Christ is head of the church; and He (Christ) is the Saviour of the body.”**

According to this the wife can never be the head in the home.

**v. 24 “Therefore, just as the church is subject to Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in everything.”**

Wives must accept the word “everything” knowing it can never include doing sin or anything that does not please God.

**v. 25 “Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for her,”**

For the husband it is a command to love their wives, if he feels like doing that or not. He should love his wife in such a manner that he will be willing to even die for her, as Christ died for the church.

**v. 26,27 “that He might sanctify and cleanse her (the church) with the washing of water by the word, that He might present her to Himself a glorious church, not having spot or wrinkle or any such thing, but that she should be holy and without blemish.”**

Paul was giving teaching to the husbands and wives, and then he makes this strong statement in verses 26,27 concerning holiness in the church.

You see, if the marriage operates according to God’s rules it will have a great spiritual effect on our way of living before God. Jesus wants to present a victorious church to His father.

**v. 28,29 “So husbands ought to love their own wives as their own bodies; he who loves his wife loves himself. For no one ever hated his own flesh, but nourishes and cherishes it, just as the Lord does the church.”**

For a husband to love his wife is so important that Paul mentioned it again. A husband should love their wives as they love their own body. If you love your own body, you won’t hurt it or disrespect it.

If you do not love yourself how will you ever love others, including your wife ?

**v. 30 “For we are members of His body, of His flesh and of His bones.”**

As husband and wife, we must always remember whatever we do, good or bad, will effect God's church.

**v. 31,32 "For this reason a man shall leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and the two shall become one flesh. This is a great mystery, but I speak concerning Christ and the church."**

To "leave" the family means to not allow the family to rule your house and to be "joined" to your wife means "to stick to her like glue" Nothing must be able to pull you apart.

**v. 33 "Nevertheless let each one of you in particular so love his own wife as himself, and let the wife see that she respects her husband."**

In conclusion Paul wanted to let the husband know that he should really love his wife and that there should always be respect in the marriage.

**Because children is part of the husband and wife, Paul writes: Ephesians 6:1-4**

**v. 1 "Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right."**

He starts with the most difficult thing for anyone to do and that is to obey.

**v. 2,3 "Honour your father and mother, which is the first commandment with promise: that it may be well with you, and you may live long on the earth."**

Yes, the promise is to live long on the earth but it is also that children who honours their parents will experience the following: "that it will be well with them"

**v. 4 "And you, fathers, do not provoke your children to wrath, but bring them up in the training and admonition of the Lord."**

The word "provoke" means: "you annoy them and try to make them behave aggressively" Parents shouldn't do this because it does not please God.

**God instituted marriage. (Gen. 2:18-24)**

- This was before the fall of man
- That's why sex in marriage is from God
- God intended marriage to be a taste of heaven on earth (Eccl. 9:9)
- God's order for the family
  - Eph. 5:22-31 and Eph. 6:1-3
  - Husband (the head)
  - Wife (subject to her husband)
  - Children (obey and honour parents)

**God's order is: Husband; wife; children and then anybody or anything else.**

### The marriage Covenant

- It is a covenant relationship (Gen. 2:21-24)
- God regards it seriously (Mal. 2:13 and Matt. 19:6)
- Man should cleave (cling, stick like glue) to his wife and that they should be one flesh (Gen. 2:24)
- God ordained one woman for one man.  
Gen. 2:24; Lev. 18:18; Deut. 17:17; 1 Tim. 3:2,12; Titus 1:6
- Sex with someone other than one's mate is adultery  
Ex. 20:14; Matt. 5:31,32; 1 Cor. 6:16-18
- God created the sexual union for the pleasure of both husband and wife (Heb. 13:4)
- Husbands must respect his wife if he want answers to his prayers.  
(1 Peter 3:7)
- A wife needs companionship
- A wife needs understanding
- A wife needs affection and romance. Eph. 5:28
- A husband should not be harsh or bitter or resentful toward his wife.  
(Col. 3:19 Amplified Bible)
- A wife needs financial security
- A wife needs a husband to be committed to the family.

### **To sum up: The 4 Pillars in Marriage in Ephesians 5 are:**

**SUBMISSION**

**LOVE**

**UNITY**

**RESPECT**

# THE ARK OF THE COVENANT

## Ex. 25:10-22

- The Ark of the Covenant was the most sacred article of Israel and was kept in the holiest place in the Tabernacle (and later Temple)
- Only once a year, the High Priest entered the Holy of Holies to sprinkle blood on the mercy seat to atone for the sins of the entire nation.
- The ark was made from acacia wood (covered outside and inside with pure gold)
- The ark was 3 and 3/4feet long (about one meter) 2 and 1/4feet wide (about two thirds of a meter) with the same height.
- It had two rings on each side with two poles to carry it (covered with gold) these poles should not be removed
- In the ark they kept the stones containing the Commandments (Later they also placed a pot with manna and also the rod of Aaron in the ark according to Heb. 9:1-5)
- On top the ark had a “mercy seat” as a lid.
- Two angels (cherubim) were made out of gold and was on top of the mercy seat. They faced each other looking down on the ark with open wings covering the mercy seat.
- Then God said to Moses in verse 22 *“And there I will meet with you and I will speak with you from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubim which are on the ark of the testimony, about everything which I will give you in commandment to the children of Israel.”*

*God repeats this in Lev. 16:2 and then says:  
“I will appear in the cloud above the mercy seat.”  
(Meaning in the “glory” above the mercy seat!)*

## 1 Sam. 4

- Israel went out to battle against the Philistines and encamped beside Ebenezer. This is the place where the prophet Samuel took a stone and called it “Ebenezer – Thus far the Lord has helped us.”
- That day the Philistines killed 4000 of Israel in the battle
- The elders of Israel could not believe that they lost the battle and took the ark from Shiloh to save them from the Philistines.
- We read in 1 Sam. 4:5 *“And when the ark of the covenant of the Lord came into the camp, all Israel shouted so loudly that the earth shook.”*
- This made the Philistines to be afraid and they said: *“God has come into the camp. Woe to us! Who will deliver us from the hand of these mighty gods?”*
- But the Philistines encouraged themselves and defeated Israel that day. In verse 10 and 11 we read: *“There was a great slaughter, and there fell of Israel thirty-thousand-foot soldiers. Also, the ark of God was captured; and the two sons of Eli, Hofni and Phinehas, died.”*
- When this message reached Eli the Priest, he fell from his chair and broke his neck. He was 90 years of age and almost blind.

- Eli was more concerned over the ark of God than his sons. We read this in verse 18 *“when he (the messenger) made mention of the ark of God, Eli fell of the seat backward by the side of the gate; and his neck was broken and he died, for the man was old and heavy.”*
- His daughter-in-law, Phinehas’ wife, was shocked to hear that the ark was taken from Israel. She was pregnant with a child and gave birth to a son and named the son “Ichabod”  
It’s a Hebrew word meaning: *“The glory has departed from Israel!”*
- In verse 22 we read: *“And she (the wife of Phinehas) said: The glory has departed from Israel, for the ark of God has been captured.”*

### **1 Sam. 5**

- The Philistines brought the ark to Ashdod
- There they put it in the house of Dagon, their god. He was the primary god of the Philistines. They put the ark next to Dagon.  
The top part of Dagon was a man and lower part was a fish. He was worshiped as the father of Baal. Baal was their fertility god. (the one that made them fruitful)
- The next morning Dagon had fallen on its face before the ark of the Lord.
- So they set Dagon on its place again.
- The morning after that Dagon was on its face before the ark, but this time the head of Dagon and both his palms of his hands were broken off.
- God’s hand was heavy on the people of Ashdod and He struck them with tumours!
- The Philistines did not want to have the ark anymore and sent it first to Gath and then to Ekron.
- Everywhere they said: “They have brought the ark of the God of Israel to us, to kill us and our people. Send away the ark of the God of Israel, and let it go back to its own place.”

### **1 Sam. 6 and 7**

- The ark of God stayed with the Philistines for 7 months
- The Philistines asked their priests how they should send back God’s ark to Israel. The answer was:
  - Do not send it back empty handed
  - Return it with a “trespass offering”  
We also read in Lev. 5:15,16 of this offering also called: “Restitution for unintentionally sins”
  - With the ark they sent “five golden tumours” (one each for the cities of Ashdod, for Gaza, for Ashkelon, for Gath and one for Ekron) and “five golden rats” (according to the number of all the other cities belonging to the five lords of the Philistines)
  - The reason for this was that they had tumours on their bodies and rats all over as a plague.
  - They made a new cart and took two milk cows which have never been yoked and took their calves away from them, so that they could pull the cart with the ark on it.

- In verse 12 we read: “*Then the cows headed straight for the road to Beth Shemesh, and went along the highway, lowing as they went, and did not turn aside to the right hand or the left. And the lords of the Philistines went after them to the border of Beth Shemesh.”*
- At Beth Shemesh the cows were offered to God as a burnt offering with the wood of the cart.
- The ark was placed on a large stone.
- After this the ark was brought into the house of Abinadab and his son Eleazar was consecrated to look after the ark of the covenant.
- In 1 Sam. 7:2 we read: “*So it was that the ark remained in Kirjath Jearim a long time; it was there twenty years. And all the house of Israel lamented after the Lord.*”

The Living Bible says: “*And during that time all Israel was in sorrow because the Lord had seemingly abandoned them.*”

# THE BLOOD COVENANT

The Bible consists of the Old and New Testament, or in other words: The Old Covenant and the New Covenant.

We can also talk about the Old Blood Covenant and The New Blood Covenant.

The word “covenant” is a word that we frequently find in the Bible. It refers to an agreement and promise made between two or more persons. In Israel to make a covenant was “to cut” an agreement.

Primitive nations (like mid Africa, the Far East and the Red Indians) understand a covenant of this nature better because they have practiced it for centuries.

The Greek word for Covenant is “diatheke” and is translated 18 times as “Covenant” and 12 times as “Testament”.

## Covenants God made with the following:

1. **Noah:** Genesis 6:18
2. **Abraham:** Genesis 15:1-21; Genesis 17:1-21
3. **Moses:** Exodus 23:4-8
4. **Israel:** Leviticus 26; Deuteronomy 11:8-32
5. **David:** 2 Samuel 7; I Chronicles 17

David knew that Goliath did not have a covenant with God. That is the reason why he declared Goliath as an “uncircumcised Philistine”

**I Samuel 17: 26:** “Then David spoke to the men who stood by him, saying, “What shall be done for the man who kills this Philistine and take away the reproach from Israel? For who is this **uncircumcised** Philistine, that he should defy the armies of the living God?” (Read verse 25)

David approached Goliath, in full confidence, because of his covenant with God. The result goes without saying.

## LET US HAVE A LOOK AT THE COVENANT BETWEEN GOD AND ABRAM. Genesis 15:1-21 and Genesis 17:1-21.

### Take Note of the following:

The animals were cut in two. This covenant was made powerful by the flowing of blood.

Vultures made an attack on the covenant, but Abram chased them away. We will find that the evil one will bring attacks against our covenant with God to cause damage. Fortunately, we can resist the devil.

**James 4:7:** “Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you.”

The Covenant promise to Israel in **Genesis 15:14,15** was: “And also the nation whom they serve I will judge; afterward they shall come out with great possessions. Now as for you, you shall go to your fathers in peace; you shall be buried at a good old age.”

In **Genesis 15:1** God promises to be his shield.

A shield is something you use to protect you from the weapons of the enemy before they hit your body. One thing we must never forget and that is: God will fight for us. (Ex. 14:14)

In **Genesis 17** God changes the name of Abram to Abraham. The “H” comes from God’s Hebrew Name. So also with Sarai. Her name became Sarah. She also received the “H” added to her name.  
**In other words a part of God’s Name.**

Circumcision was implemented as a sign of the covenant.

**Genesis 17:10:** “This is my covenant which you shall keep, between Me and you and your descendants after you: Every male child among you shall be circumcised;”

We are circumcised in our hearts! **Romans 2:28,29:** “For he is not a Jew who is one outwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the Spirit, not in the letter; whose praise is not from men but from God.”

### **How did Israel keep a Covenant?**

When two persons went into covenant with each other, they gave themselves entirely to each other. Here we think of David and Jonathan.

We read about it in **I Samuel 18:3,4**

“Then Jonathan and David made a covenant, because he loved him as his own soul. And Jonathan took off the robe that was on him and gave it to David, with his armour, even to his sword and his bow and his belt.”

With a covenant between two people the following took place:

#### **1. The one gave to the other:**

In other words, they gave their authority to each other.

**His Belt.** This speaks of truth.

**Ephesians 6:14:** “Stand therefore, having girded your waist with truth, having put on the breastplate of righteousness. **Attached to the belt was the person’s weapon.** So when someone gave his mantle and his belt, he was saying: “If someone touches you, he touches me!”

#### **2. Then an animal was taken and cut in half.**

The two halves were taken and laid opposite each other, with a walk-through between it.

**Genesis 15:10:**

“Then he brought all these to Him and cut them in two, down the middle, and placed each piece opposite the other; but he did not cut the birds in two.”



The two persons stood with their backs towards each other, they then walked between the slaughtered animal, in a figure eight, until they stood face to face with each other, again.

The form eight is two circles that was next to each other, not crossing over or on top of each other. In a covenant the one is not above or higher than the other, they are on the same level. The figure eight, when laid on its side, is symbolized as “infinitely” in other words, there is no break, it just carries on and on.

In this covenant we say to each other that we die to self, and give up all rights we had up till then. Together with our covenant partner we begin a new life. Further we say to each other that God can cut me from top to bottom, like this animal and feed me to the vultures, if I break this covenant.

3. **They then lifted their right arms and cut it and pressed it together so that blood could mingle.** While doing this they made an oath of faithfulness to each other. This scar on the right hand proved as evidence that a covenant took place.
4. **Then they changed names.** The last name becomes the other ones name and vice versa.  
In other words the “surnames” are exchanged.  
Here we think of a marriage when the wife takes the surname of her husband.
5. **After this came the covenant feast.** They used wine and bread, in place of meat and blood of the animal. It is for this reason we have communion (or a covenant feast) which continually reminds us of the covenant we have with God through the death of Jesus Christ.

#### **Thank God for the Blood Covenant. The Blood of the New Testament.**

In **Matthew 26:26-28**: is written: “And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed and broke it, and gave it to the disciples and said; “Take, eat, this is My body.” Then He took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, “Drink from it, all of you. “For this is My blood of the new covenant, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.”

#### **IN THE BIBLE THE BLOOD WAS USED FOR THREE THINGS:**

1. **PROTECTION:**  
During the tenth plague in Egypt with the deaths of the firstborn, we read in: **Exodus 12:13**: “Now the blood shall be a sign for you on the houses where you are. And when I see the blood, I will **pass over** you; and the plague shall not be on you to destroy you when I strike the land of Egypt.”

And according to **Psalm 105** I believe that a mass healing took place in Israel that same night. **V.37:**”**and there was none feeble among the tribes**”

For forty years their feet did not swell in the desert.

**Deuteronomy 8:4:** “Your garments did not wear out on you, nor did your foot swell these forty years.” It shows how healthy they were. God protected them from illnesses.

## 2. **PURIFICATION – Hebrews 9:22; I John 1:7:**

By the purification of the leper, blood also played a big roll. (**Leviticus 14**) The one that had leprosy had to be brought to the Priest. The Priest then took two live pure birds and killed one in an earthen vessel over running water so that the blood and the water mixed. He then dipped (or baptised) the living bird into the mixture of blood and water. The leper then got sprinkled seven times with the blood. After that the living bird were let loose in the open field to fly away.

After seven days the leper had to wash his clothes, shave all his hair and bath himself. Then he was clean.

After this the Priest slaughtered a lamb and took the blood and stroke it on the cleansed leper’s right earlobe, right thumb and right big toe. He repeats this with oil. That means that our ears, hands and feet, are purified by His blood, to hear, to do, and to go, as it pleases God. We are also anointed on our ears, hands and feet to be used by God!

## 3. **CONSECRATION.**

Think of the dedication of the Priest

**Exodus 29:10-14; 15-18; 19-22.** Here we see that the blood had to flow three times. The first (the bull) as a sin offering (**Leviticus 4**) the second the ram as a burnt offering (**Leviticus 1**) and the third (the other ram) as a consecration offering.

That which was used to worship God, was offered unto Him with blood.

Read: **Hebrews 9:18-22; Hebrews 9:21:** “Then likewise he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle and all the vessels of the ministry.”

The Living Bible says: “And in the same way he sprinkled blood on the sacred tent and on whatever instruments were used for worship”.

**Conclusion:** There is truly victory for the children of God through the Blood of the Lamb. **Revelation 12:11:** “And they overcame him (the devil) by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives to the death.”

**We can with great boldness enter into God’s Glory through the Blood of Jesus. Hebrews 10:19:** “Therefore, brethren, having boldness to enter the Holiest by the blood of Jesus.”

**Thank God for the Blood covenant between Him and us!**

**WHEN THE ENEMY ATTACKS YOU, REMEMBER THAT YOU HAVE A COVENANT WITH GOD.**

# HOW CAN A CHURCH GROW?

We want to grow spiritually and in numbers. No Church can grow spiritually and not in numbers.

If a married couple don't have children or their children don't grow, they visit a doctor. You can't be satisfied if there is no growth in your life.

TO CREATE GROWTH, WE DO THE FOLLOWING:

WE CHANGE THE BAND

WE APPOINT A WELCOME COMMITTEE

WE CLEAN UP THE CHURCH

WE EVEN BUY "SOFT" CHAIRS

REMEMBER: WE CAN ONLY SET THE POTENTIAL FOR GROWTH!

Read: Mark 4:26-29 v.28 *"For the earth yields crops by itself"*

## **IT IS GOD WHO BRINGS GROWTH**

**1 Cor. 3:1-7** "And I, brethren, could not speak to you as to spiritual people but as to carnal, as to babes in Christ. I fed you with milk and not with solid food; for until now you were not able to receive it and even now you are still not able; for you are still carnal. For where there are **envy, strife and divisions** among you, are you not carnal and behaving like mere men? For when one says, "I am of Paul" and another, I am of Apollos", are you not carnal? Who then is Paul, and who is Apollos, but ministers through whom you believed, as the Lord gave to each one? I planted, Apollos watered, but God gave the increase. So then neither he who plants is anything, nor he who waters, but God who gives, the increase."

- Who **plants** and who **cares**? (God or me?)
- Who lays hands on the sick?

**Mark 16:18** "They shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover"

**Matthew 10:8** "Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: Freely ye have received, freely give"

## **TWO THINGS ARE NECESSARY FOR GROWTH**

Planting must take place. This is to **EVANGELISE**

**Mark 16:20** In the Living Bible: "And the disciples went everywhere preaching, and the Lord was with them and confirmed what they said by the miracles that followed their messages"

Caring what we planted.

God brings growth, but we plant and care.

The complaint against the shepherd in the Old testament is also against the church of today.

**Ezekiel 34:4** "The weak you have not strengthened, nor have you healed those who were sick, nor bound up the broken, nor brought back what was driven away, nor sought what was lost; but with force and cruelty you have ruled them"

## **THERE ARE 3 THINGS THAT HINDER GROWTH (1 Cor. 3:3)**

**Envy/Strife** (also spiritual envy)

**1 Tim. 3:3** “not given to wine, not violent, not greedy, for money, but gentle, not quarrelsome, not covetous;”

**2 Tim. 2:24** “And a servant of the Lord must not quarrel but be gentle to all, able to teach, patient”

## **GROWTH IS THE ONLY EVIDENCE OF A HEALTHY LIFE.**

No **furniture** can grow it just looks nice

There is a lot of “**furniture**” in the church!

God can give life as He did when the rod of Aaron brought forth fruit.

(**Num. 17:8**) “The rod of Aaron had sprouted and put forth buds, had produced blossoms and yielded ripe almonds”

A “rod” was a token of authority. God can restore yours.

There are 3 stages of growth.

- The root that supports the plant. This we cannot see. But this is the most important part of the plant!
- The stem and leaves that we can see
- The fruit we can enjoy. Fruit was never meant to be a decoration.

## **HOW DID PAUL AND APOLLOS OPERATE IN CORINTH?**

Paul planted (Acts 18:1-8)

See what happened in the house next to the church. We want everything to happen inside the church building.

God is sending worldwide revival through Cell groups

Apollos did the “watering” (Acts 18:24,27,28) See what they did in Ephesus!

The Key word is in **verse 27** “and when he arrived, he greatly helped those who had believed through grace”

## **WHAT CAN YOU AND I DO TO PROMOTE GROWTH IN OURSELVES?**

1, Establish **God’s order** in your home

Remember “Church” begins in your home.

God’s order (His rules) works like this:

**God** first, then the **husband**, then the **wife**, followed by the **children**, the **church**, your **work** etc.

Somehow Moses forgot how it worked and almost died. Because he did not circumcise his son! Read **Ex. 4:24-26**

2. Get your **relationship** right with God. (Spend time in the Word & prayer.)

That is your main calling

No Gratitude = No Praise

No Praise = No Worship

No Worship = No Relationship

3. Establish **your Vision** in your heart and be certain in what God called you.

**Hab. 2:2** “Write the Vision and make it plain on tablets, that he may run who reads it”

**Prov. 29:18** No vision, the people perish.

Spanish Bible: “**They become like wild horses**”

**YOUR VISION MUST BE:**

**Realistic  
Time bound  
Measurable**

**If you want to know more about Church Growth you must study the book of Acts.**

This book was written by Luke, the physician (Col. 4:4) as a follow-up of his Gospel in which he writes about the life, death and resurrection of Jesus.

The book of Acts illustrates how the first church gained momentum after the Holy Spirit was poured out on the first disciples.

The book of Acts starts with the church in Jerusalem, and its growth. After the growth came the persecution. Due to the persecution that followed, the believers were forced to flee to other areas, this in turn led to the spread of the good news of the gospel to the other nations, who heard the good news and believed. This is how the gospel was spread to Ethiopia, North Africa. Acts. 8:46

***This is not so much "THE ACTS OF THE APOSTELS" but rather "THE ACTS THE HOLY SPIRIT."***

Acts and James are the only books in the New Testament, which do not end with "AMEN"!

The Acts of the Holy Spirit is certainly not completed yet, but is continuing.

There seems to be plenty of seminars being held from time to time about one or other important aspect of what the New Testament church must do to grow. All have their foundation in Acts.

In order to understand the whole plan of God with His church, we need to look at the total message of Acts. For this reason, the Lord gave me the word: "BACK TO ACTS".

Please, read the book of Acts again during your daily bible reading time. Put yourself in the place of these first disciples. Share their experience in the working of the Spirit of God, the salvation of souls, the signs and wonders, and pray: "Lord, do it again"

**HOW DID THE FIRST CHURCH GROW?**

The church in the book of Acts grew. (study these scriptures)

***Acts 4:4, 5:14, 6:7, 9:32-35, 11:21***

**We hear many voices today**

The one says: "If you want growth in your church you need Cell groups". The other says: "You must pray more" and still another says: "Praise and Worship is the answer. "All of these are good answers but in **Acts 2:42 – 47** there are 9 components God used to let the first church grow

We all want to get to **Acts 2: 47**.

“And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved”.

We also want to get to the place where we will have favour with God and favour with men.

**Living Bible (Acts 2:47)** “The whole city was favourable to them, and each day God added to them all who were being saved”.

*In The MESSAGE* Acts 2:47 reads as follows: "The people in Jerusalem were very impressed by the lifestyle of the believers. Everybody talked about it. That is why there were people who came to faith and believed in Christ daily." The Living Bible states: "The whole nation had a good opinion of them" Read Acts 7:9,10. GRACE is free, but FAVOUR you must earn! Favour exalted Joseph, from out of the jail to the highest position in the palace. The word FAVOUR in Greek is CHARIS. I believe that Christians should enjoy the favour of God as well as that of their fellow man.

Sometimes we have wrong perceptions such as:

- Everybody must hate me because I'm a Christian
- I give unto God's work, but don't really expect anything back (2 Cor. 9:6-11)
- If God calls me, He'll send me somewhere I really don't want to go
- Because I serve God I must always be persecuted

### **LET US LOOK AT THE 9 THINGS GOD USED TO BRING GROWTH TO THE CHURCH IN JERUSALEM:**

#### **No. 1**

Acts 2 Verse 42 “and they continued steadfastly in the apostles doctrine and fellowship, in the breaking of bread and in prayers.”

They devoted themselves to the teaching of the Apostles. (This takes us back to what Jesus said in Matthew 28:19) Every child of God must be taught the principles of God's Word. This is what happened to the new believers in Ephesus. No wonder that Paul started a Bible School (Acts 19:8-10)

**The number one thing all Christians should know is what their position is in Christ. (Eph. 1:1-3)**

- |           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Eph. 1:3  | He has blessed us with spiritual blessings. |
| Eph. 1:4  | He has chosen us.                           |
| Eph. 1:7  | We have redemption through His blood.       |
| Eph. 1:11 | We have obtained an inheritance.            |
| Eph. 1:13 | We were sealed with the Holy Spirit.        |

This is your position – but you must also “walk worthy wherewith ye are called” Eph.4:1. If we do the wrong things mentioned in Eph. 4:25-31 we will grieve the Holy Spirit.

## **No. 2**

The second thing that helped them to grow is also written in verse 42: It tells us that they had fellowship with each other  
Today the church is full of lonely Christians.  
This is one reason why we don't see growth.

## **No. 3**

Verse 42: They broke bread  
They ate together (this also includes communion)  
Why don't we share our meals with each other?

## **No. 4**

Verse 42: The first church knew how to pray  
Read Acts 4:31 first. Then read on until you come to Acts 5:14 See if you can find (for yourself) these seven things that God did because they prayed.

## **No. 5**

Verse 43: Signs and wonders  
According to this verse they had signs and wonders.  
If there are signs and wonders in your church, you will grow.

Study: Acts 3 (the lame man) Acts 4:4 (5,000 men)  
Acts 5:12-14 Acts 8:5-8  
Acts 9:32-35 Acts 16:25-33 Acts 19:11-20

## **No. 6**

Verses 44 & 45: Mutually they possessed everything together.  
Amplified: "Not one of them claimed that anything which he possessed was (exclusively) his own, but everything they had, was in common and use of all"  
If the church starts sharing with each other their possessions we will see a move of God.

## **No. 7**

Verse 46: They went to church  
How can we think we will grow if we don't go to our place of worship?  
Heb. 10:25 "Let us not neglect our Church meetings, as some people do".  
There are too many "Submarine Christians" These are Christians that only show up now and then.

## **No. 8**

Verse 46: I think God is trying to tell us something here about Cell meetings  
Also read 1 Cor. 14:26 and you will find that what Paul wrote here cannot take place in a normal church service, if there are a hundred or more together. In a cell group 1 Cor. 14:26 can take place. That is why cell groups are needed in the Church.

## **No. 9**

Verse 47: Praise and Worship was a lifestyle.  
Did they worship God in the Temple?  
Where and how do you think they gave praise to God?

We have a problem: WE PRAISE GOD AS WE WERE BROUGHT UP!  
Our churches today will overflow if we praise and worship God with our whole heart. God will dwell among us Ps 22:3 "God is enthroned in the praises of His people!"

### **A CHURCH WILL GROW IF THEY CAN PRAY AS WE READ IN ACTS**

#### **4:31.**

The preceding story is about the healing of the cripple man at the temple gate called Beautiful. When Peter was explaining in the temple what had happened to the man, and when the message of Jesus was proclaimed, the temple police put Peter in jail. Now the assembly was praying for him.

Due to them praying, SEVEN things happened:

- **The place was shaken! (Acts 4:31)**

Only a God given "shaking" will give a spiritual breakthrough in our land. According to Heb.12: 25-28 God will create a mighty shaking, and only those who are in the Lord, will remain standing.

**Amplified Bible:** "Now this expression "yet once more" indicates the final removal and transformation of all (that can be) shaken, that is, of that which has been created, in order that what cannot be shaken may remain and continue"

- **They were all filled with the Holy Spirit!**

But they were already filled on the day of Pentecost ? Apparently it was so important for God that He filled them again.

I am of the opinion that you and I regularly need a new infilling.

- **They received liberty and freedom because they prayed.**

Thank God for Heb.10: 35.

I pray that the Lord will give you a liberty that will amaze you.

- **The believers were one of heart and mind. (Acts 4:32)**

COME LET US PRAY FOR THE UNITY OF THE CHURCH.

- **The wrong things amongst them were revealed because they PRAYED.**

Think of what happened to Ananias and Sapphira, as we read the story in Acts 5: 1-10.

Church laws will not keep a church pure, but where the people pray, cleansing takes place.

- **Many signs and wonders took place. Acts 5: 12-16.**

God used signs and wonders to let His first Church grow, and He will do it again. Also read Mark 16:20 in the Living Bible.

- **God added more and more believers. (Acts 5:14)**

Nothing else, but earnest, fervent, soaking PRAYER will bring this about.

ARE YOU AND I PREPARED TO PRAY MORE AND WITH A GREATER ZEAL?



## **YOUR CHURCH WILL GROW IF YOU EXPERIENCE THE SAME THAT IS WRITTEN IN ACTS 9:31!**

*The Living Bible translates Acts 9:31 as follows: "The church had peace and grew in strength and numbers. The believers learned how to walk in the fear of the Lord and the comfort of the Holy Spirit."*

### **COME LET US LEARN FROM THIS SCRIPTURE WHAT CAUSED ASSEMBLIES TO GROW. (According to Acts 9:31)**

The Bible refers to "CHURCHES" *"Then the **churches** throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria (all these regions) had **peace** and were **edified**. And walking in **the fear of the Lord** and in the **comfort of the Holy Spirit**, they **multiplied**."*

#### **They had PEACE! (Peace and tranquillity)**

Paul writes in Col. 3: 15 The Living Bible states it as follows: "The peace that Christ gave us, must act as a referee in your heart, when you doubt about something, because God has called you to be one body that lives in peace and harmony." ***The referee knows the rules. He blows the whistle, and his verdict is final.***

#### **They were EDIFIED (Build up)**

They did not break each other down, but rather built each other up.  
If there is one thing that destroys the work of God, it is the TONGUE.  
Read James 3 then you will see what power the tongue does have.

Words are like a pillow filled with feathers. If you cut it open and shake it out in the wind, you will NEVER be able to gather all the feathers again.

#### **BEFORE YOU TALK, CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING:**

- (a) Is it true?
- (b) Is it necessary?
- (c) Is it full of love?

James 1:19 "Let every man be SWIFT to HEAR, SLOW to SPEAK"

#### **They WALKED in the fear of the Lord.**

The fear of the Lord refers to AWE, REVERENCE, and RESPECT". The fear of the LORD must return to the Church.

If we fear God, we will not touch His anointed.

(Think of how David acted towards King Saul)

If we fear God we will not rob Him. Read Mal. 3:10 and Acts.5: 1-11.

If we fear God, we will show respect when the Holy Spirit works.

When God works, even if you do not understand it, do not speak against it.

Do not grieve the Spirit of God. If something is not of God, it will not last.

**I AM PRAYING FOR PEOPLE WHO WILL BE ABLE TO TEACH OTHERS HOW TO FEAR GOD. (Read: 2 Kings 17:28)**

#### **They had the COMFORT of the Holy Spirit.**

Thank God that He gave us the Holy Spirit. 2 Tim.1:7

ONLY AFTER THEY EXPERIENCED THE ABOVE THE BIBLE SAYS  
"THEY MULTIPLIED"

**YOUR CHURCH WILL GROW IF YOU CAN LEARN FROM THE STORY WE  
FIND IN THE ACTS 19, OF HOW EPHEBUS GREW AS CHURCH**

Acts 19 always gives me courage, because if God could let His church grow in such an idolatrous city as Ephesus (Acts 19:35), He can let His church grow anywhere.

Ephesus was a city in Lydia, on the West coast of Asia Minor, opposite Corinth. An earthquake hit the city, and after that the harbour was flooded, which led to the whole destruction of Ephesus. .

It is here where Paul fought with wild animals! (1 Cor.15: 32)

***THE FOLLOWING FACTORS CONTRIBUTED TO THE GROWTH OF  
EPHEBUS AND WILL MAKE ANY ASSEMBLY GROW TODAY!***

1. They were filled with the Holy Spirit. (Acts. 19:2,6)
2. They were trained in the WORD. (Acts 19:8-10).  
The Amplified bible says that the Bible School in Ephesus was in operation daily from ten o'clock in the morning till three in the afternoon.  
Sunday's preaching is not enough Word for our people, and assemblies cannot be satisfied with one or two word schools per year.

OUR PEOPLE MUST BE TAUGHT IN THE WORD OF THE LORD, ON A REGULAR BASIS. JUST LOOK AT THE END RESULT OF THIS WORD TEACHING IN EPHEBUS.

The Bible tells us that in two years the whole of Asia heard the Word.

Who do you think brought the Word to the people?

The answer is: Those who attended this Bible School.

3. Ephesus experienced signs and wonders. (verses 11,12)  
The world wants to see God in action, and they do not just want to hear good sermons.

**Ephesus grew because they cleansed themselves from all the sinful things that had a hold on their lives! (verse 15-20)**

OH, MAY THE ACTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT CONTINUE IN EACH  
ASSEMBLY THAT SEEKS GOD IN SINCERITY!

**PRAY THIS PRAYER:** "LORD, TAKE US BACK TO THE ACTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IN OUR LIVES. BY THIS WE MEAN THAT THE SPIRIT OF GOD WILL WORK IN US AND DO THAT WHICH HE DID IN AND THROUGH THE FIRST CHURCH, AND THAT HE WILL DO MORE TODAY THAN HE DID IN THE PAST. WE ASK THIS IN JESUS' NAME. AMEN"

# **SPIRITUAL LEADERSHIP**

## **Recommended Textbook:**

*“Developing the Leader within you” by: John C. Maxwell  
Publisher: Thomas Nelson, Nashville. Tennessee. U.S.A.*

## **This world needs real Leaders. More than that:**

This world needs “Spiritual Leaders” Leaders that are guided by the Spirit of God.

## **The story of Joseph is a very good example:**

He was seventeen when his brothers sold him as slave in Egypt.

Soon after this he was put innocent in jail.

Thirteen years later Pharaoh had two big dreams and all of his magicians could not interpret them for Pharaoh.

Then the chief butler remembered Joseph whom he met in prison years ago and that he could interpret dreams.

Pharaoh called for Joseph and Joseph told him that there will be seven years of good harvest in Egypt followed by seven years of famine.

**Then we read a striking verse in Genesis 41:38 where Pharaoh said these words concerning Joseph:** *“And Pharaoh said to his servants: Can we find such a one as this, a man in whom is the Spirit of God?”*

Pharaoh could see that this young man of 30 years was a *“Spiritual leader”* Why? Because God’s Spirit was in him and this made him a *“Spiritual leader”*

The good thing about this story is that in one day Joseph was exalted from prison to be Prime Minister of Egypt! This was a miracle.

(Read about it in Genesis 41:39-43)

**If you are a preacher; politician; businessman (or woman) or whatever you are doing in life, decide to be a “Spiritual leader”**

**John Maxwell said:** "If you say you are a leader, and look behind you and see that nobody is following, you are not a leader, you're only taking a walk!"

**The Message Bible says:**"The mark of a good leader is loyal followers; leadership is nothing without a following" (Proverbs 14:28)

**These days churches need true leaders.** God never wanted a few to do all the work in the congregation.

Approximately 20% of church members are involved in one or other form of leadership in the congregations. Why not more than this?

In **1 Corinthians 12: 12 to 31** and **Ephesians 4: 11** clear teaching is given that each one has a function to fulfil in the congregation so that growth can occur.

**LEADERS NEEDED IN THE CHURCH** The following types of leaders are urgently needed -- even in the smallest congregations:

- Pastor's and cell group leaders. Churches will be as strong as their leaders.
- Woman as leaders. Woman's ministry must be encouraged.
- Youth leaders  
Our youth needs committed leaders
- Soul winners.  
Therefore we must pray for workers according to **Matthew 9: 37 and 38**
- Intercessors.  
To stand between God and man! **Ezekiel 22:30** -- "I looked for a man among them who would build up the wall and stand before me in the gap on behalf of the land so that I would not have to destroy it, but I found none."
- Worship leaders  
***To lead God's people into worship. The music ministry is only as strong as the singers and musicians. Therefore these people must be real worshippers themselves when they come to church to lead God's people into the holy of holies.***
- The Sunday school or Children's church is only as strong as its superintendent and teachers.  
Those that work with our children must therefore be the BEST LEADERS in the congregation.  
One thing that really builds congregations spiritually is good preaching of the Word. We must pray for leaders that can minister the Word powerfully.  
The Living Bible says in **Romans 12: 8** "If you are a preacher, see to it that your sermons are strong and helpful"

Through the ages God has worked mainly through leaders.  
He only used a donkey twice.

**Remember one thing:**

A leader is strengthened when he is supported by other leaders that support him with good counsel. Don't be afraid to gather good leaders around you because the Word says: (**Proverbs 11: 14**) "many advisers make victory sure." Strong leaders will always challenge you and keep you on your knees

What a Spiritual Leader should be:

**He/she must be someone that is called by God for the task**

Think of:

Moses -- **Exodus 3**

Joshua -- **Joshua 1: 1, 2**

Ezekiel -- **Ezekiel 2 and 3**

**Do you really want to work for God? Then the word God gave to Ezekiel, when He called him, also applies to you:**

**Ez. 2: 1** "And He said to me, son of man, stand on your feet, and I will speak to you."

If you want to work for God, you will have to stand up in your spirit, so that you can hear God's voice speaking to you.  
You will not hear God clearly if you cannot "stand up" in yourself.

**Ezekiel 2: 2** *"Then the Spirit entered me when He spoke to me and set me on my feet; and I heard Him who spoke to me."*

You see, when Ezekiel stood on his feet, he could hear God's voice.

Another thing is that you will be able to work with success if His Spirit rests on you. It is therefore very important to be filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

**Jesus said in Acts 1:8** *"But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth."*

If you want to be an effective witness for Christ you must be filled with the Holy Spirit.

**Ezekiel 3: 1 and 2** You will have to "eat" the Word *"Moreover He said to me: Son of man, eat what you find; eat this scroll, and go, speak to the house of Israel. So, I opened my mouth, and He caused me to eat that scroll."*

Let the Word dwell in you richly. Discipline yourself to read the Bible. You will always find that when God gives you a word, He will always want you "to go" with that word and take it to someone.

There is a greater anointing in "going" than in "staying"

**Ezekiel 3: 8 and 9** If you want to work for God you must have a "soft heart" but a "strong (or hard) forehead"

To Ezekiel God said: *"Behold, I have made your face strong against their faces, and your forehead strong against their foreheads. Like adamant stone (or diamond) harder than flint, I have made your forehead..."*

If you are a person that is easily hurt or offended, you will not be successful in whatever you try to do for God.

**Ezekiel 3: 15** You will also find when God calls you to do something for Him that there will be a time that you feel to speak to nobody, but to be quite before the Lord as Ezekiel did: *"Then I came to the captives at Tel Abib, who dwelt by the River Chebar; and I sat where they sat and remained there astonished among them seven days."*

*(seven days is a perfect season of time)* Amplified Bible: *"overwhelmed...and silent."*

**Another thing we must take note of is that If you are doing a work for the Lord and there are no results, you are either not called for that work or God has a new calling for you.**

Before we appoint leaders, we must hear what the Holy Spirit says. We read for example what happened in the church of Antioch when they had to appoint leaders. We read this in **Acts 13: 2** -- "While they were worshipping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said: Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them."

**Today we appoint people in the church through a popular vote. What we should do is to ask the Spirit of God to tell us who we should appoint.**

### **WHAT A LEADER IS**

#### **A leader is somebody with courage**

The word God gave Joshua as new leader when he had to take over from Moses to lead Israel into the Promised Land was this: Joshua 1: 7 "Be strong and very courageous. Be careful to obey all the law my servant Moses gave you; do not turn from it to the right or to the left, that you may be successful wherever you go."

**To be courageous means:** "to be brave in danger"

Although everyone around you becomes discouraged, you should still be able to call out as Paul did on the sinking ship -- "So keep up your courage, men, for I have faith in God that it will happen just as He told me." (**Acts 27 v. 25**)

*Good Advice! Never make a decision when you are discouraged.*

**If you have courage you can dare to make decisions.**

Many are fearful to step out. The true leader steps out if he is convinced that it is the right thing to do.

#### **The spiritual leader is one that can serve.**

One's "size" is not measured by one's place or position that he occupies. True leadership is not about continually ruling over people, but by serving others.

**Elisha was a mighty man of God that performed many miracles, but he was known for his servant heart.**

This is what was said about Elisha in **2 Kings 3:11** "*But Jehoshaphat said, 'Is there no prophet of the Lord here, that we may inquire of the Lord by him?' So one of the servants of the kings of Israel answered and said, Elisha the son of Shaphat is here, who poured water on the hands of Elijah.*"

Read again the last words I have underlined in this text. Elisha wasn't known by his miracles but that he washed a mighty prophet's hands.

Jesus once spoke about the desire of a mother that her sons (John and James) should sit at His left and right-hand: "Not so with you. Instead, whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, and whoever wants to be first must be your slave" **Matthew 20: 26, 27**

In **Mark 10: 45** Jesus made this statement: "For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life as a ransom for many."

#### **A spiritual leader can submit to authority**

The first authority we have to submit to is to God.

Someone who cannot submit to God will not be able to resist the devil.

**James 4: 7** "*Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you.*"

You see, you have first to submit to God before you can resist the devil.

After Samuel anointed David as king, David submitted himself to Saul for a further seven years before being appointed in Saul's place as king.

**Let's look at Luke 10: 19 (Power and Authority)**

*"Behold, I give you the authority to trample on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall by any means hurt you."*

According to this statement Jesus made, He has given us authority over all the power of the enemy.

The word authority comes from the Greek word "exousia" meaning the right to act as given by a higher authority. God has given us authority over the evil one. The devil does not have this kind of authority, but he has power.

*But listen to this: The devil only has the power we allow him to have over us. But we have the authority to destroy anything that wants to destroy us and our loved ones.*

**I love the scripture in Isaiah 54:17** *"No weapon formed against you shall prosper, and every tongue which rises against you in judgment you shall condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord."*

You will find that the devil will form a weapon against you, but thank God if you use your authority against his power, you will overcome every attack of the enemy, because He that is in you is greater than he that is in the world.  
**(1 John 4:4)**

But one thing you must always remember and that is that this authority God gives us will only be given to you if you submit yourself to God's authority.

**The true leader has the correct mentality.**

He definitely doesn't see himself as a "grass hopper"

**In Numbers 13: 30 Caleb says:** "We should go up and take possession of the land, for we can certainly do it."

**In Numbers 13: 31 to 33 the others said:** "We can't attack those people; they are stronger than we are. We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes."

We call this kind of talking "*the grasshopper mentality*"

It is a bad thing if someone else sees you as a "*grasshopper*" But it is worse when you see yourself as one.

Years later when Caleb was 85 years of age (and that was 40 years after what was recorded in Numbers 13) he still had the right positive mindset. We read this declaration he made at the age of 85: *"And now, behold, the Lord has kept me alive, as He said, these forty yours ever since the Lord spoke this word to Moses while Israel wandered in the wilderness; and now, here I am this day, eighty-five years old. As yet I am strong this day as on the day that Moses sent me; just as my strength was then, so now is my strength for war,*

*both for going out and for coming in. Now therefore give me this mountain of which the Lord spoke in that day; for you heard in that day how the Anakim were there, and that the cities were great and fortified. It may be that the Lord will be with me, and I shall be able to drive them out as the Lord said."*

**Jos. 14:10-12**

The true leader says he can do all things through Christ who strengthens him  
**(Philippians 4: 13)**

### **A leader knows discipline**

The word "*discipline*" comes from the same root as the word "*disciple*." No one can be a true disciple of Christ and not be disciplined.

The leader studies while others sleep.  
He prays while others play.

**Someone once said these words:** "The heights by great men reached and kept were not attained by sudden flight, but they, while their companions slept, were toiling upward in the night".

### **A leader can make decisions and will not be afraid to do what he decided**

Life is decisions. What we need today are leaders that can take good decisions and that will not be afraid to do what they decided on. As soon as a real leader is sure of God's will he immediately comes into action and inspires people to act together with him. Be that leader!

### **A leader should be full of the Spirit of God**

**Moses had so much of the Spirit of God on him that even after sharing his power with 70 elders he was still full of the power of God!**

We read of this in Numbers 11:25 "*Then the Lord came down in the cloud, and spoke to him (Moses) and took of the Spirit (referring to the Holy Spirit) that was upon him, and places the same upon the seventy elders; and it happened, when the Spirit rested upon them, that they prophesied..."*

### **Daniel was a strong leader because of the Spirit of God in his life.**

In the book of Daniel chapter five we read of King Belshazzar that had a dream that troubled him. His wife, the queen, came to him and said these words concerning Daniel the prophet: "*Do not let your thoughts trouble you, nor let your countenance change. There is a man in your kingdom in whom is the Spirit of the Holy God. And in the days of your father, light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, were found in him; and king Nebuchadnezzar your father – your father the king – made him chief of the magicians, astrologers, Chaldeans, and soothsayers. Inasmuch as an excellent spirit, knowledge, understanding, interpreting dreams, solving riddles, and explaining enigmas were found in this Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar, now let Daniel be called, and he will give the interpretation."*

The Spirit of God that made Daniel an outstanding leader in his day, will do the same for you as a leader.



**One of the most important qualifications for the first deacons was that they should be full of the Holy Spirit.**

When the first church appointed these first deacons, we read these words:

**Acts 6: 3** *“Therefore, brethren, seek out from among you seven men of good reputation, full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom, which we may appoint over this business.”*

**Even Jesus needed the Holy Spirit.**

**John 3: 34** *“For He whom God has sent (John the Baptist is referring to Jesus) speaks the words of God, for God does not give the Spirit by measure.”*

**In Acts 10: 38 we read this about Jesus, the best leader ever:** *“God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power, who went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him.”*

How can we, as leaders of God's work, be happy with less than this?

Thank God, He wants to give us His Spirit.

Jesus said in Luke 11: 13 *“If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him.”*

**A leader is someone with a vision (a passion)**

He must be so convinced of the vision that he has received from God that he can convey it to others with conviction so that they will also feel excited about it and will want to run with the vision.

**Habakkuk 2: 2** (in the **King James** Translation) expresses it as follows:

*“and the Lord answered me, and said, write the vision, and make it plain upon tables, that he may run that readeth it ”*

Do your best as a leader to always get a “fresh” revelation from God.

**A leader is somebody that takes a stand against that which is wrong**

We live in the time of the “silent” majority.

Jesus as the perfect leader took a definite stand against that which was wrong.

We read of how Jesus cleansed the temple in Matt. 21: 12 to 14

*“Then Jesus went into the temple of God and drove out all who bought and sold in the temple and overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold doves. And He said to them: ‘It is written, My house shall be called a house of prayer, but you made it a den of thieves’ **Then the blind and the lame came to Him in the temple, and He healed them.**”*

**It was very important that the temple first be cleansed before miracles could happen! Do you want to see miracles? Then pray for the cleansing that’s needed in the church.**

### **A leader has insight into the spiritual world**

In other words, his eye is good!

**In Matt. 6: 22, 23** Jesus made this statement: *“The lamp of the body is the eye. If therefore your eye is good, your whole body will be full of light. But if your eye is bad (evil) your whole body will be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in you is darkness, how great is that darkness!”*

Those in the past who could "see" more than a normal person have been able to influence their generations for God.

There will always be a big difference between a spiritual leader (meaning someone that is led by God's Spirit) and other leaders.

We must think as God thinks.

**Paul states in Philippians 4: 8** "Finally, brothers, whatever is true, whatever is noble, whatever is right, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever is admirable – if anything is excellent or praiseworthy, *think about such things.*"

The devil often gets us to think with our carnal mind, and we lose the way God wanted us to think as mentioned in the scripture above. By doing this we lose our battles.

Sometimes we even fight with ourselves in prayer instead of fighting the real enemy of evil forces.

We talk about the devil too much. Let's just drive him out!

After all, this was God's command to those who believe according to what Jesus said. **Mark 16: 17** *“And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons.....”*

### **A leader must be able to delegate**

D.L. Moody once said that he would rather put 1000 people to work than do 1000 people's work for them.

If you have a tendency to do everything yourself you are not a good leader.

This is what Moses did in **Exodus 18** after his father-in-law told him to do it. But when you delegate tasks, you must also clearly stipulate what you expect from the person you give the task to do. In other words, tasks and duties must be clearly described.

Moses was prepared to appoint 70 leaders, so that he would not do everything himself.

**We read of this in Numbers 11: 16 and 17** *“So the Lord said to Moses: Gather to Me seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom you know to be the elders of the people and officers over them; bring them to the tabernacle of meeting, that they may stand there with you. Then I will come down and talk with you there. I will take of the Spirit that is upon you and will put the same upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with you, that you may not bear it yourself alone.”*

Any leaders that want to do everything themselves will find out that the load will be too heavy for them to carry. The result will be failure and even sickness.

When you as a leader delegate certain responsibility to someone, you must be able to allow mistakes, otherwise you will always want to do everything on your own, and this is not right.

### **A leader gives recognition to others**

Treat others as winners and give recognition when somebody does something well. To give recognition to somebody is always effective. Even the most constructive criticism can be hurtful.

Somebody said:"Catch people doing something right, and then tell everybody about it"

Ask yourself the following questions:

Am I jealous if God uses others? (Moses wasn't. Num.11: 26 to 29)

Is their pride in my heart? (Proverbs 16: 5)

What do I do if others are chosen before me?

Do I like to criticise?

Do I exercise self-control if things go wrong?

Am I someone that can make peace? (Matthew 5:9)

### **A true leader is somebody that can hear from God.**

**You can only hear from God if you live in a relationship with Him**

There is nothing that the leader should surpass his people in more:

**And that is in prayer!**

Martin Luther said that when he had more to do in a day he had to spend more time in prayer.

If you study Jesus' prayer life you'll see how serious He was about this.

**Luke 6: 12** *"Now it came to pass in those days that He went out to the mountain to pray and continued all night in prayer to God."*

**Mark 1: 35** *"Now in the morning, having risen a long while before daylight, He went out and departed to a solitary place; and there He prayed."*

**Mark 6: 46** *"And when He had sent them away (the people) He departed to the mountain to pray."*

**Luke 9: 28** *"Now it came to pass, about eight days after these sayings, that He took Peter, John and James and went up on the mountain to pray."*

**Therefore times of drawing aside in prayer are vitally important.**

The devil doesn't mind if we run through God's green pastures, but he gets worried when we want to lie down in them.

David knew how important it was for him to get alone with God through prayer, that's why he could write these words in **Psalm 23: 2** *"He makes me to lie down in green pastures; He leads me beside the still waters."*

**When a leader has heard from God he is not a man pleaser.**

In **Galatians 1: 10** Paul writes these words: *"For do I now persuade men, or God? Or do I seek to please men? For if I still pleased men,*

*I would not be a bondservant of Christ.”*

Act as a leader! Many want to be leaders but act so apologetically that they can never achieve success.

### **A leader takes his people with him.**

To Joshua, the new leader of Israel, God said in **Joshua 1:2** *"Now then, you and all these people, get ready to cross the Jordan River"*

If we have really heard from God, people will follow us.

If I don't get people to follow me in a particular cause I should know that I should not be the leader in that matter.

## **A STUDY OF MOSES AS A LEADER**

One cannot attempt a study of leadership without looking at Moses. After all, he led between 2 and 3 million Jews for 40 years through the wilderness to Canaan.

Moses' life can be divided into three sections. For his first 40 years he was in Egypt. For his second 40 years he was in the wilderness where he looked after livestock and lived with the priest of Midian.

During the last 40 years he led Israel out of Egypt into Canaan.

Through the hospitality of Jethro, the priest of Midian, Moses was helped out of his bitterness and self-condemnation with which he had fled from Egypt. Jethro welcomed Moses and led him into a world of hope and preparation. (**Exodus 2:20**)

### **A true leader needs to exhibit a ministry of hospitality.**

Paul even mentioned that one of the qualifications of a leader in the Church is that they should too be *"hospitable"* (1 Tim. 3:3)

We never hear any preaching on this, while it is very important for a leader to be hospitable.

The Bible says that through hospitality we may entertain angels.

**Hebrew 13: 3** *"Do not forget to entertain strangers, for by so doing some have entertained angels"*

In the desert Moses learned to distinguish between sympathy and principle, between being impulsive and staying calm.

### **Only in the "desert time" in your life (meaning the lonely time) you learn what your real calling is about.**

Moses learned a lot in the loneliness of the desert, and fortunately God put a family around him.

Thank God that we as leaders are also not alone. God has given us brothers and sisters in the Lord that can support us in the task that we must do.

**The true leader is one that is thoroughly prepared by God for his task.**

It took Moses 40 years to complete his degree in the "Wilderness University". Moses was a person just like us with a violent temper and a speech impediment.

**Moses went through an amazing period of his life when he only had success.**

Think of the 10 plagues and passing through the Red Sea. Yes, even the greatest ruler on the earth (namely Pharaoh) died at his hands. Manna fell out of heaven; water came out of the rock; the Amalekites were defeated when Moses stood on the mountain with his arms lifted up. No wonder the people wanted him to help them. What an amazing position to be in, but what a dangerous position to be in.

God sends a simple priest to Moses (his father-in-law) to warn him. Jethro even says, "What you're doing is wrong" Jethro's advice prevented the downfall of a leader as well as that of the people of Israel.

See Moses and Jethro in the tent talking about what God had done for Israel (**Exodus 18: 7 to 9**) This was followed by worship (**v. 12**)

**What happened in Exodus 18:13-23 changed the history of the world.** (For you as a leader it will be a good thing to study this passage in God's word.)

Up until now Moses had thought that he had all the ministries necessary to help the people with their problems. He wanted to make a good impression on his father-in-law, Jethro. He wanted him to be proud of him.

**JETHRO GAVE MOSES 5 KEYS TO ACHIEVE SUCCESS AS A LEADER.**

**THESE KEYS ARE STILL VALUABLE AFTER 4000 YEARS!  
THEY ARE:**

**1. Moses had to be their intercessor.**

He was to be the people's representative to God and bring their problems before God.

We read in Ex. 18:19 where God said to Moses "Listen now to My voice; I will give you counsel, and God will be with you. Stand before God for the people, so that you may bring the difficulties to God."

**No one can be a successful spiritual leader if he doesn't represent the people that he leads, before God, through prayer.**

As an intercessor Moses protected the people from God's judgments  
*Numbers 16: 1 to 50*

As an intercessor, Moses did not seek his own interests.

**Exodus 32: 7 to 14 and Numbers 12: 1 to 50**

**2. He had to be their teacher.**

God said to him: "*And you shall teach them the statutes and the laws*" (Ex. 18:20) He had to teach them the laws of God.

### 3. He had to be an example.

In this same verse God said to Moses: “and show them the way in which they must walk and the work they must do.”(v.20) A leader shows the way by walking in front.

### 4. He had to be able to delegate.

Very clearly God said in verse 21: “*Moreover you shall select (not elect) from the people (not by the people) able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place such over them to be rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties and rulers of tens.*”

If Moses wanted to be a good leader, he had to delegate his work to others. A “bad” leader wants to do everything himself.

Paul gave the same counsel to Timothy in 2 Timothy 2: 2 “*And the things that you have heard from me among many witnesses, commit these to faithful men who will be able to teach others also.*”

### 5. He had to be able to make judgments only over great matters.

In verse 22 we read: “*And let them judge the people at all times. Then it will be that every great matter they shall bring to you, but every small matter they themselves shall judge. So, it will be easier for you, for they will bear the burden with you.*”

One of the reasons leaders break down under the load they carry is because they want to judge every problem in the church, while God gave this example in the life of Moses.

Jethro completes his counsel to Moses with the following words:

**Exodus 18: 23** “*If you do this thing, and God so commands you, then you will be able to endure, and all these people will also go to their place in peace.*”  
(One other translation says: “*you will be able to endure the pressure, and there will be peace and harmony in the camp*”)

If we want “peace and harmony” in our church, we should learn from this scripture

## A WORD OF WARNING TO LEADERS

### Govern your house

The Bible says in **1 Timothy 3: 4 and 5** of a spiritual leader: “*He must manage his own family well and see that his children obey him with proper respect. If anyone does not know how to manage (or govern) his own family, how can he take care of God's church?*”

Did you know that God wanted to kill Moses at one stage? **Ex. 4:24-26**

**Why was this? It was because Moses had not circumcised his son. God saw it as a violation of his covenant.** (Genesis 17: 14)

**Zipporah his wife came to his aid and circumcised their son herself.**

Women need to take a stand in the Lord. If the husband does not ensure that his children are brought up according to God's laws, the wife should stand up like Zipporah and fulfil God's laws for the family.

### **Make sure that your rod does not become a snake!**

In every rod there's a snake. If authority is abused, the snake will strike! It bites the one holding it.

Only once did Moses use his rod incorrectly. He hit the rock with his rod when he should have just spoken to the rock. As a result, he was not allowed to go into Canaan.

## **A SHORT STUDY OF NEHEMIAH AS A LEADER**

He was a man of prayer.

When he heard that Israel was in great need and that the walls of Jerusalem were broken down, we read these words in **Nehemiah 1: 4 and 6** *"So it was, when I heard these words, that I sat down and wept, and mourned for many days; I was fasting and praying before the God of heaven...I pray before You now, day and night, for the children of Israel Your servants, and confess the sins of the children of Israel which we have sinned against You. Both my father's house and I have sinned."*

If you read through the book of Nehemiah, you will find how many times he prayed. He prayed before he did anything. This is what a leader should do.

He was a man who could confess (admit)

In **Nehemiah 1:6** we read: *"Both my father's house **and I** have sinned."*  
I believe: *"If you can confess, you can overcome"*

He was a man of courage

When there was a conspiracy against Nehemiah to kill him, and his friends told him to hide himself from his enemies in the temple, we read these words *"And I said: Should such a man as I flee? And who is there such as I who would go into the temple to save his life? I will not go in!"* **Nehemiah 6:11**

He was a man who sincerely cared about the needs of his fellow man.

**Nehemiah 2: 10**

He was a man of strategy.

In **Neh. 2:12** we read: *"I told no one what my God had put in my heart to do at Jerusalem..."*

You as a leader should take note of this scripture. I failed in the past as leader many times because I spoke "too quickly" what God has put in my heart, when I should have done what Nehemiah did.

He went out by night and tried to find God's plan of what he had to do in Jerusalem. In **Neh. 2:16** we read: *"And the officials did not know where I had gone or what I had done; I had not yet told the Jews, the priests, the nobles, the officials, or the others who did the work."*

He was wide-awake and watchful.

His enemies wanted to stop him rebuilding the wall of Jerusalem and one of them said: *“Now Tobiah the Ammonite was beside him (beside Sanballat) and he said: Whatever they build, if even a fox goes up on it, he will break down their stone wall”* **Neh. 4:3**

Nehemiah’s answer to this was to pray but also to be watchful.

In **Neh. 4:9** we read: *Nevertheless, we made our prayer to our God, and because of them we set a watch against them day and night.”*

He was a man who **motivated** his followers.

He said to them: *“And I told them of the hand of my God which had been good upon me, and also the king’s words that he had spoken to me. So they said: ‘Let us rise up and build’ Then they set their hands to this good work.”*

**Nehemiah 2: 18**

*“And I looked, and arose and said to the nobles, to the leaders, and to the rest of the people, ‘Do not be afraid of them. Remember the Lord, great and awesome, and fight for your brethren, yours sons, your daughters, your wives and your houses...Wherever you hear the sound of the trumpet, rally to us there. Our God will fight for us.”* **Nehemiah 4: 14 and 20**

He also said to his followers these words: *“Do not sorrow, for the joy of the Lord is your strength.”* **Nehemiah 8: 10**

**Two chapters you should take time to study is Nehemiah 8 and 9**

You will find that Nehemiah inspired the people to come together to hear God’s word that was read by Ezra the priest.

God’s word was read *“from the morning until midday”* (Neh. 8:3)

The people reacted on God’s word: *“Then all the people answered ‘Amen, Amen!’ while lifting up their hands. And they bowed their heads and worshipped the Lord with their faces to the ground.”*

I want you to take note of what the people did:

- There first reaction on God’s word was to say “Amen”  
By saying that they agreed with what God said. We must do the same.
- The second thing they did was to lift up their hands before the Lord.  
Why are we so afraid to lift up our hands before God?
- Then they bowed down and worshiped God. We must humble ourselves and be willing to worship God in spirit and in truth.



## **CHARACTER OF A SPIRITUAL LEADER**

- Only by conquering yourself, will you be able to conquer anything else. This is what David had to do. He had to conquer the negative things his brothers said against him before he could conquer Goliath.  
We read this story in 1 Sam. 17:28,29.  
*“Now Eliab his oldest brother heard when he (David) spoke to the men; and Eliab’s anger was aroused against David, and he said: ‘Why did you come down here? And with whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know your pride and the insolence of your heart, for you have come down to see the battle. And David said: ‘What have I done now? Is there not a cause?’” (Amplified Bible: “Was it not a harmless question?”)*
- Discipline yourself by working while others waste time; study while others sleep; pray while others play.
- Be willing to take unpleasant tasks others avoid to do.
- Be willing to stand up for the truth.
- Always be willing to receive correction
- Discipline yourself to plan ahead.
- Have a passion for your vision and always look for a way to fulfil your vision, not for a reason why it can’t be done.
- When you are sure of the will of God; pursue it.
- Humility and integrity must control your life.
- Protect your joy, because Nehemiah 8:10 says: *“The joy of the Lord is our strength.”*
- Be a person of prayer and allow the Holy Spirit to help you to pray, because we do not always know how to pray, but the Holy Spirit helps us in our prayer life. (Rom. 8:26)

### **OVERCOMING TEMPTATION**

- Temptations do not stop when we get saved, or when we become a leader.
- Always stay in God’s word, because if you know the truth it will set you free. (John 8:32)
- Temptation always starts in the mind, therefore we must renew our mind according to Rom. 12:2. Think on the things you will find in Phil. 4:8. This will help you not to think evil things.
- Coming back to Joseph: Remember how he overcame temptation. He ran away from it. (Ex. 39:3-20) The best thing for you is always to *“Run”*

### **EVERY LEADER SHOULD BE WILLING TO SERVE**

Jesus washed the feet of His disciples. (John 13:1-15)

In verse 14 and 15 He said: *If I then, your Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another’s feet. For I have given you an example, that you should do as I have done to you.”*

Remember: The reason God gave the fivefold ministry was that it should serve the body of Christ - Eph 4: 11,12 “And He Himself gave some to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, and some pastors and teachers. For the equipping of the saints for the work of ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ.”

***Responsibility, accountability, and authority (Qualities of a good leader)***

- A leader will take on responsibility.  
***Jesus knew He had to go to the cross and He accepted His task.***  
***Heb 12:2 “(Jesus) who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and has sat down at the right hand of the throne of God.”***
- A leader will count the cost and pay the price.  
***Example: Paul being a Jew was persecuted by the Jews because he preached a liberating gospel.***
- A leader is able to submit and yet not be controlled.  
The Apostle Paul when in Jerusalem, submitted himself to the apostles in love, but he did not submit to doctrines he did not believe.

**Set an example in word and deed -1 Tim 3:2-13 -- Always desire to be:**

- *Blameless*
- *The husband of one wife*
- *Temperate*
- *Sober-minded*
- *One with good behaviour*
- *Hospitable*
- *Able to teach*
- *Not given to wine*
- *Not violent*
- *Not greedy for money*
- *Gentle*
- *Not quarrelsome*
- *Not covetous*
- *One who rules his own house well*
- *Not a novice*
- *Have a good testimony in the public*
- A true leader will not be afraid of other ministry gifts fulfilling their God-given vision.
- A true leader looks for ways to bring peace without compromise of doctrine
- A true leader brings out the best in other people.
- A true leader will not fight for position or recognition but will please the Holy Spirit.
- A true leader is concerned for others.
- A true leader will be a man or woman of character and integrity.
- A true leader will not be controlled by the devil, man or his family and friends, but only by God’s Spirit.

## **LEADERS SHOULD HAVE A DREAM**

If you can “dream” it, you can do it! Nothing is impossible for God.

Your godly desire is like a vision and a dream.

A "vision" is having the ability to see something not actually visible, having the ability to see beyond what is and cause to come about what should be.

A "dream" is to think upon your godly desire and to “see” it in your spirit.

### **What you should do to make your dream come true.**

A dream comes to pass through diligent effort on our part as well as the Lord's. **Eccl. 5:3** *“For a dream comes through much activity.”*

It doesn't fall out of the sky. You play a certain part.

**Proverbs 21:5** *“The plans of the diligent (someone that works hard) lead surely to plenty.”*

**Proverbs 10:4** **“He who has a slack hand becomes poor, but the hand of the diligent makes rich.”**

### **Decide to be a “sower” in God’s kingdom and understand the principles of “Sowing and Reaping” according to 2 Corinthians 9.**

*Verses 6 to 12 “Remember this: he who sows sparingly and grudgingly will also reap sparingly and grudgingly, and he who sows generously and that blessing may come to someone, will also reap generously and with blessings. Let each one give as he has made up his own mind and purposed in his heart, not reluctantly or sorrowfully or under compulsion, for God loves (that is, He takes pleasure in, prizes above other things, and is unwilling to abandon or to do without) a cheerful (joyous, prompt-to-do-it) giver – whose heart is in his giving. And God is able to make all grace (every favour and earthly blessing) come to you in abundance, so that you may always and under all circumstances and whatever the need, be self-sufficient – possessing enough to require no aid or support and furnished in abundance for every good work and charitable donation. As it is written, He (the benevolent person) scatters abroad, he gives to the poor; his deeds of justice and goodness and kindness and benevolence will go on and endure forever! And God who provides seed for the sower and bread for eating will also provide and multiply your resources for sowing and increase the fruits of your righteousness (which manifests itself in active goodness, kindness and charity) Thus you will be enriched in all things and in every way, so that you can be generous (and your generosity as it is) administered by us will bring forth thanksgiving to God. For the service the ministering of this fund renders does not only fully supply what is lacking to the saints (God’s people) but it also overflows in many (cries of) thanksgiving to God.” (Amplified Bible)*

### **If you want to see your ministry grow:**

Plan to take more time in God’s Word and prayer.

Be around anointed men and women of God.

One great preacher once told me: *“I only listen to successful people.”* This may mean that you will end up leaving some friends because they influenced you in a negative way.

Always be a scholar and be humble to learn from others.

Plan to make the best of your time.

### **If you want to see the dream of your marriage life come true:**

Understand that God is first in your life, then your wife (or husband) then your children; after them the church etc. Spend time with your spouse; your children and family by planning it. Plan your marriage according to **1 Peter 3:1-7**

**Set goals for your spiritual life:**

Be a person that will know how to praise and worship God. Take enough time to read and study God's Word and to pray.

**Dream about your job, business and career:**

There is nothing wrong to have a successful job, business, and career. God wants to bless you in your finances so that you will have enough and that you will be able to bless His kingdom with your finances. He wants you to give your tithe and offerings to your local church; to give to Missions; to sponsor a Bible School student and to give to the poor.

***Begin to find scriptures on finances and speak them over yourself and your finances.***

Your dream can come to pass by making small goals that are obtainable this will help you reach your higher goals. A dream or vision just does not happen overnight.

**Set aside time for routine things, such as your prayer time; time to study; leadership meetings.**

But always be flexible to meet the needs of people  
Col. 4:5 *"Walk in wisdom...redeeming the time."* The word used here for time is *"kairos"* (opportune time) Once time passes it can never be retrieved.

If you are not there early, you are late (Jason Stafford)  
You should study Eph 5:15,16 *"See then that you walk circumspectly, not as fools but as wise, redeeming the time, because the days are evil."*

Moses prayed to be taught to measure time by days, not years Ps 90:12  
*"So teach us to number our days that we may gain a heart of wisdom"*

ALWAYS FINISH THE WORK YOU STARTED!

**Do not allow fear, because fear will cause:**

**Sickness** - Proverbs 17:22 *"A merry heart does good, like medicine, but a broken spirit dries the bones."*

**Bondage** - Proverbs 29:25 *"The fear of man brings a snare, but whoever trusts in the Lord shall be safe."*

**Torment** - 1 John 4:18 *"There is no fear in love; but perfect love casts out fear, because fear involves torment...."*

**Failure** - Deut 20:8 (What God said when He chose His army) *"The officers shall speak further to the people, and say: What man is there who is fearful*

*and fainthearted? Let him go and return to his house, lest the heart of his brethren faint like his heart.”*

#### How you see yourself is critical

It is not how big the giants are in your life that wants to stop you, but how small you see yourself before them.

In Proverbs 23:7 we read: *“as a man thinks, so is he.”*

It is not what you are that holds you back, it is what you think you are not.

#### There is nothing wrong with starting small

In Job 8:7 we read these words: *“Though your beginning was small, yet your latter end would increase abundantly.”*

Always plan to grow. It is okay to be in a small place, just don't let the small place be in you.

#### Make plans to grow in your department/ministry.

- Don't let the cares of the world knock you off course.
- Get other people involved in your department.
- Think of ways to make your department the best.
- Write on paper your goals for your department.
- Modernize your department.
- What do you want your department/ministry to accomplish this year?  
How can you make it better and more efficient? What supplies do you need?
- Does every leader have a copy of the church/ministry vision?
- Does every leader have guidelines for your areas of ministry?

### **BOSS OR LEADER**

**The world needs leadership - nobody wants a boss!**

#### **A Boss**

- Drives a man
- Depends on authority
- Inspires fear
- Assigns a task
- Gives orders
- Fixes the blame for the breakdown
- Pushes people
- Gets complaints
- Says “Get going!”
- Builds machines

#### **A Leader**

- Coaches him
- Depends on goodwill
- Inspires enthusiasm
- Sets the pace
- Makes suggestions
- Fixes the breakdown
- Persuades
- Gets co operation
- Says, “Let's go!”
- Builds man

### **TO BE A SUCCESSFUL LEADER**

- One must have a balance between the spiritual and the practical.
- Be able to relate your knowledge to others.
- You are not a teacher until someone is taught.

# **SOUL WINNING**

## **THE GREAT COMMISSION**

*The Great commission which Jesus gave to His disciples is found in  
Matt. 28:19. "Make disciples of all nations"*

In **Matt. 9:37,38** Jesus said that the harvest is plentiful, and the workers are few and that we must pray asking the Lord of the harvest to send workers into His harvest fields.

If I interpret Rev. 14 correctly, it appears that the labourers will not reap the harvest in time and that the Lord will have to swiftly put in the sickly to harvest. Is this not already starting to happen? **Rev. 14:15** "Take **your** sickle (the angel is talking to Jesus) and reap, because the time to reap has come, for the harvest of the earth is ripe"

May God give us a new passion for lost souls. Some of them we work and study with every day. Others are our neighbours next door. Others are our sport friends.

Even though we may talk about all the various methods used in Evangelization, it does not mean that these techniques must first be perfected before we can start reaping souls for the kingdom of God.

We need to heed the Word, which says in **Ecclesiastes 9:10** "**Whatever your hand finds to do, do it with all your might.**"

There are many Christians who have never won a soul for the Lord. The main reason being that they have no burden for the lost souls. Jesus Christ removed the burden of our sin but replaced it with a burden of a different kind, a burden for souls. There is no greater joy than bringing a seeking soul to a seeking Saviour, who is able to save them from their sins.

**Do you want to have a burden for souls?** Realize then that every unsaved person is lost without hope, heading for an eternal hell. What will you do with this startling truth while God desires that all should be saved?

Charles Pearce of England was on his way to the gallows when confronted by the prison chaplain who pleaded with him to surrender his life to Jesus Christ. Before his execution he turned to the chaplain, looked him straight in the eyes and said, "Sir, do you believe there is a hell for the unrepentant such as I? And Sir, do you believe that God is merciful to save the likes of me?" When the chaplain was through answering these questions, Charles Pearce said to him, "Sir, if I believed it, I would cross England, even if it meant crawling over broken glass to warn the unsaved of their eternal destiny without God." These were the last words of Charles Pearce before he was hanged.

### **DO WE BELIEVE IN WHAT WE PREACH?**

Do we really believe that my neighbour, my friend or family will go lost forever if they are not washed in the blood of Jesus Christ?

**Think on this: All the treasure in the world cannot pay for one soul.**

**Matt. 16:26** “For what profit is it to a man if he gains the whole world, and loses his own soul? Or what will a man give in exchange for his soul?”

Try and think of the price on the cross, which Jesus had to pay for our salvation.

**ALWAYS REMEMBER:** “The Son of Man has come to seek and save that which was lost” (Luke 19:10)

### **THE FIRST THING YOU MUST DO IS “LOOK”**

John 4:35 “Do you not say, ‘There are still four months and then comes the harvest’? Behold, I say to you, **lift up your eyes and look at the fields**, for they are already white for harvest!”

You will have a compassion for people if you could **see them in their need!**

In Matt.9:36 we read the following about Jesus: “But when He saw the multitudes, He was moved with compassion for them, because they were weary and scattered, like sheep having no shepherd.”

### **THE SECOND THING YOU MUST DO IS “GO and TELL”**

The whole Gospel is a “**GO**” Gospel!

Jesus never said that we must wait until the souls come to our church, but He said we must go to all nations with His word.

He also did not say that we must only pray for the harvest, but we read these words in **Matt. 9:37,38** “**Then He said to His disciples, The harvest truly is plentiful, but the labourers are few. Therefore, pray the Lord of the harvest to send out labourers into the harvest.**”

In Mark 5:19 we read what Jesus told the man that was delivered from demons and wanted to stay with Jesus. He said: “**Go home to your friends and tell them what great things the Lord has done for you, and how He has had compassion on you.**” **Also read: Mark.16:15 and Matt.28:19**

### **LET US ALSO CONSIDER THE SHORTNESS OF LIFE!**

**1 Sam. 20:3** “But truly, as the Lord lives and as your soul lives, there is but one step between me and death.”

**Psalm 103:15-16** “As for man, his days are like grass... For the wind passes over it, and it is gone.”

**Jas. 4:14** “What is your life? You are a mist that appears for a little while and then vanishes.”

**Psalm 39:5** “You have made my days a mere handbreadth; the span of my years is as nothing before you. Each man’s life is but a breath.”

Soul winners heed this warning. We often receive only one chance to speak to someone about his soul’s salvation. Let us not miss that opportunity and stand guilty before God, through neglect.

## WHY SHOULD WE BE SOUL WINNERS?

### *Because Jesus Christ commands us to reach the world with the Gospel:*

**Matt. 4:19** “Come follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.”

**Mark. 16:15** “He said to them, “Go into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature.”

**Luke 14:23** “Go out to the roads and country lanes and make them come in, so that my house will be full.”

**Matt. 10:32-33** “Therefore whoever confesses (acknowledges) Me before men, him I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven. But whoever denies Me before men, him will I also deny before My Father who is in heaven.”

### *Because we are appointed to watch over one another.*

**Ezekiel 33:7-11** “Son of man, I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel, so hear the word I speak and give them warning from me. When I say to the wicked, “O wicked man, you will surely die,” and you do not speak out to warn the wicked from his ways, that wicked man will die for his sin and I will hold you accountable for his blood. Nevertheless, if you do warn the wicked to turn from his ways and he does not do so, he will die for his sin, but you will be saved yourself...As surely as I live, declares the Sovereign Lord, I take no pleasure in the death of the wicked, but rather that they turn from their ways and live. Turn! Turn from your evil ways! Why will you die, O house of Israel?”

### We are made watchman and we are made our brothers keeper.

Today we want to do what Cain did when God asked him where his brother was. **Gen. 4:9** “Then the Lord said to Cain, “Where is your brother Able? ‘I don’t know’, he replied. Am I my brother’s keeper?”

### We hear arguments like these:

“Why should I watch over others? They also have the Bible in their home. They can also themselves go to church, etc.etc.”

### ***Soul winner, you and I should not one day stand guilty before God!***

## **WHAT ARE THE CHARACTERISTICS OF A SOUL WINNER?**

**Proverbs 11:30** says that he who wins souls is wise.

You should first win people for yourself before you win them for the Lord.

- Wise as serpents and harmless as doves (Matt.10:16)
- Learn when to speak and when to be quiet (Matt.10:19)
- Paul gave good teaching on this in 1 Cor.9:19-23. In verse 19 he says: “*I have made myself a servant to all, that I might win the more*” and in verse 22 he says: “*I have become all things to all men that I might by all means save some.*”



**This does not mean that you must become a sinner to win a sinner for Christ! But if we want to win the world for the Lord we should get rid of our “holier-than-thou” attitude.**

Yes, you should even dress differently when witnessing to a businessman than to a farmer.

A true soul winner is someone who is always ready, waiting for the opportunity to witness for Christ. His eyes and ears are alert waiting on the guidance of the Holy Spirit to assist him when the moment comes for him to witness boldly. Consider how Jesus approached the women at the well in John 4. Jesus started the discussion asking her for natural water and ended up giving her the spiritual Living Water!

1. Jesus started with her need
2. He created a desire in her heart (v.13-15)
3. He touched her problem (v.16,17)
4. She made a decision.

What happened to this woman was so powerful that she went into her city and told everyone what Jesus did for her. The end of this story is that they all believed in Christ.

You as a Soul winner must give your best to that one soul you meet in this life, that they may be used by God to win many others to the Lord.

### YOUR TESTIMONY

Share your testimony with someone, by telling them what Jesus Christ has done in your life, is the most important commission a Christian can fulfil.

To help us become more effective, let us look at the following guidelines:

A thoroughly prepared testimony, which is given with the backing of the Holy Spirit, will have an immediate effect. We must strive to present Jesus Christ and this wonderful salvation message in such a clear, attractive and powerful way that it still retains it's beauty and simplicity, so that people will not only desire to know Him, but will be led to have a personal encounter with Him.

**God will use a well-planned testimony of three to five minutes.**

### HOW TO DELIVER A TESTIMONY

The listeners must sense an attitude of love, enthusiasm, devotion and the power of the Holy Spirit. **Eph. 5:18.**

Be friendly. Don't start an argument or try to be controversial.

Avoid showing that you are nervous, such as clearing your throat, or playing with your nose or tie, etc.

### WHAT TO DO:

Ask the Lord to lead you and give you wisdom. James 1:5-6

Use a 4-point scheme to get direction in your testimony.

- Before I became a Christian my life was... and I thought ...
- How I accepted Christ...
- The changes that have come now that He is in control.
- The security; joy; peace and other benefits which are in Him.

Expand on all that has taken place now that He is in control and let it all be to His praise and glory.

Keep your testimony short and captivating, remembering that it is His name that must receive the honour, not yours.

Remain positive throughout and do not relate negative tales of general problems in your church or even in your own life.

#### WHAT NOT TO DO

Do not use church names. It can imply that all others are wrong and only yours is right.

Do not “preach” Speak naturally; you are testifying not preaching.

Do not use words that are mere clichés.

Always take time to explain words not commonly used in everyday language such as saved, born again, justified, etc.

Do not talk too long. It is unnecessary to talk on and on. Get to the point.

## **WHAT TO DO WITH THOSE WHO HAVE EXCUSES**

We first name the problem or excuse and then the Scripture verses which can be used as a solution. Write them somewhere in your Bible.

### **"I am a too great sinner"**

**1 Tim. 1:15** – "This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief."

Is. 1:18 – "Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool."

**1 John. 1:7** "The blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin."

**John. 6:37** "The one who comes to Me I will by no means cast out."

### **"I am too hard"**

**Ezek. 36:26** – "A new heart also will I give, and a new spirit will I put within you, and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you a heart of flesh."

### **"It is too difficult to keep God's commandments"**

**1 John. 5:3; Matt. 11:29,30** Satan's yoke is heavy and hard !

**Prov. 13:15** "But the way of transgressors is hard."

### **"I will be persecuted if I become a Christian"**

If it is for the sake of Christ, you should be thankful!

**2 Cor. 11:24-28 says:** "Of the Jews five times received I forty stripes save one. Thrice was I beaten with rods, once was I stoned, thrice I suffered shipwreck, a night and a day I have been in the deep. In journeying often, in perils of waters, in perils of robber, in perils by mine own court men, in perils by the heathen, in perils in the city, in perils in the wilderness, in perils in the sea, imperils among false brethren. In weariness and painfulness, in watching often, in hunger and thirst, in fasting, often, in cold and nakedness. Beside those things that are without, that which cometh upon me daily, the care of all the churches."

**2 Tim. 3:12** "All that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution."

**Matt. 5: 10-12** "Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness sake; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake. Rejoice, and be exceeding glad; for great is your reward in heaven, for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you."

**John. 16: 33** "These things I have spoken unto you; that in Me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation; but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world."

**1 Peter 4: 12-16** "Beloved, think it not strange concerning the fiery trail which is to try you, as though some strange things happened unto you. But rejoice, in as much as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that when His glory shall

be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy. If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the Spirit of glory and of God rests upon you; on their part He is evil spoken of, but on your part, He is glorified. But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or as a thief, or as an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters. Yet if any man suffers as a Christian, let him not be ashamed; but let him glorify God on this behalf."

Look at what others had to go through. **Acts 5: 40-41** tells us: "And to him they agreed; and when they had called the apostles, and beaten them, they commanded that they should not speak in the name of Jesus, and let them go, and they departed from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for his Name."

**"What will my family and friends say?"**

**Matt. 10:37** "He that loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and he that loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me."

**Matt. 19:29** "...and every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sister, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for My Name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life."

Salvation is a personal matter. The invitation is still very clear: "**Follow Me!**"

**John. 21: 19-22 says:** "This He spoke, signifying by what death He would glorify God. And when He had spoken this, He said to him: 'Follow Me'. Then Peter, turning around, saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following, who also leaned on His breast at the supper, and said: 'Lord, who is the one who betrays You?' Peter seeing him, said to Jesus: 'But Lord, what about this man?' Jesus said to him: 'If I will that he remain till I come, what is that to you? You follow me.'"

**"I am afraid that I will not be able to persevere"**

**John. 10: 28-29** "And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand. My Father, which gave them to me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand."

**1 Cor. 10:13** "There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man; but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it."

**Gal. 5:16** "This I say then, walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh."

**2 Tim. 1:12** "For this reason I also suffer these things; nevertheless I am not ashamed; for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that He is able to keep what I have committed to Him until that day. "

**Jude verse 24** "Now unto Him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present you faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy."

**Phil. 4:13** "I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me."

***Amplified Bible:*** "*Him who infuses inner strength into me (that is, I am self-sufficient in Christ's sufficiency)*"

The challenge that comes to each child of God, is not alone to pray that souls are saved, but add this to your prayers: **"AND SEND ME!"**

**"CHRIST ALONE CAN SAVE THE WORLD, BUT CHRIST CANNOT SAVE THE WORLD ALONE."**

### **HOW TO WIN and KEEP SOULS IN THE CHURCH**

- During every church service we must invite people to receive Christ
- There must be trained Alter Workers that can pray with these people.
- Then there should be "*Follow-up Workers*" that must visit these new converts and guide them in God's word
- The next step is to introduce them to a cell group where they can feel they belong to God's family. In this cell group they will be cared for.

## **THE ALTAR WORKER**

(Use these notes in training the Altar workers)

- He/she must be a person truly committed to the Lord, living a dedicated life to the Lord. One cannot help another if one needs spiritual help oneself. It is thus necessary to read the Bible faithfully and to spend time in prayer
- The Altar worker must be a person who is worthy of the trust put in him/her. What is said to the worker must be treated confidentially. When a person confides in you, he/she does not want to hear all about it in town the next day.
- The worker must always be neatly dressed. Always attend to your breath, hair and nails, so that a searching soul will not be hindered to come to Christ.
- Always come to church prayerfully.
- Allow visitors to feel at home by welcoming them friendly.
- When the invitation is given by the preacher, do not look around you but pray earnestly for the harvest to come in.
- As soon as the invitation to come to Christ is given, get up and move forward. Your movement may often encourage someone sitting next to you, to stand up for the Lord too.
- Brothers pray with men and sisters with ladies.
- Introduce yourself and ask: "What do you need from the Lord?" (This is how you will determine a person's need).
- Never talk or pray out loudly. Someone might be disturbed. See to it that you do not speak or pray directly into the person's face.
- Never be in a hurry! Rather spend quality time with one person than attending to a number of persons and leaving them halfway.
- Allow the person to read the verses of Scripture with you.
- Do not attempt to counsel a person without your Bible. Chose your verses beforehand. Do not search around for them in front of this new soul, seeking the Lord.
- You should always have an altar card and a pen with you to write down the name and address of the person.
- Refrain from the habit of placing your arm around the person.
- If the person is unknown to you, introduce yourself and find out who the person is.
- Determine the need of the person by asking: "What do you need from the Lord?"
- The guidance of the Holy Spirit is absolutely essential because very often people are shy and not even honest with themselves so that their real need is not mentioned.

## **HOW TO LEAD A SEEKING SOUL TO CHRIST**

Explain to him/her that we have all sinned.

**Rom. 3:23** “For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God”

**1 John. 1:8 & 10** “If we claim to be without sin we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we claim we have not sinned, we make him out to be a liar and His Word has no place in our lives.”

If a person realizes this and are willing to confess their sins, there is hope that he/she can be saved because Christ said in **Luke 5:32** “I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance. Christ came to this earth to atone for our sins

He/she must now confess his/her sins to Christ.

**1 John 1:7-9** “But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, His son, purifies us from all sin. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins and purify us from all unrighteousness.”

**Is. 1:18** “Come now, let us reason together, says the Lord. Though your sins are like scarlet, they shall be as white as snow, though they be as red as crimson, they shall be as white as wool.”

And when God forgives, He also forgets and says He remembers it no more.

The person must pray himself and confess his sin. (He doesn't need to confess them one by one, but only what the Holy Spirit lays upon his heart). Now he must accept Jesus Christ as his Saviour. He must believe that the Lord has heard him because this is a step of faith. He should not depend on his feelings. We are being saved because the Word of God declares it and not because we feel that way. This does not say that there is not emotion attached to serving God. On the contrary, he will most definitely feel better because his burden of sin has been removed and his debt has been paid! If God has forgiven him, he must forgive himself also.

If he is not able to pray himself, you should help him by praying ahead of him, allowing him to repeat after you word by word.

The prayer said by him should include two vital points:

- a) He must confess his own sin.
- b) He must accept Jesus as his Saviour.

Jesus must be accepted as Lord and Saviour.

**John. 1:12** “To all who received Him, to those who believed in His name, He gave the right to become children of God.”

Having accepted this truth the new convert must be told to confess that He is a child of God.

**Rom. 10:9-10** “If you confess with your mouth “Jesus is Lord” and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved. For it is with your heart that you believe and are justified, and it is with your mouth that you confess and are saved.”

***How can a new creature in Christ remain silent?***

Now you pray for him and congratulate him. Write down his name and address and complete the card using block letters.  
State clearly whether it is Mr., Mrs. or Miss.  
In case of a child, make use of the first name.

### **HOW DO WE HELP CHILDREN?**

Explain the Word to the child on his/her level.  
Use the same Scriptures as above but make sure that the child knows what it is all about.

Pray separately with each child and not in a group.



## **THE FOLLOW-UP WORKER**

Follow-up work is one of the things that has been neglected in the Church and must be restored again. We will not benefit when souls visit our services and even make commitments to the Lord, if they are not properly followed-up.

### **WHERE AND HOW SHALL WE START?**

Trust the Lord to put His hand on the right follow-up workers.  
Train them with a course for follow-up workers before using them.  
These workers must be willing to get together each Monday evening for prayer and to do visitations. Each new convert should be followed-up within 24 hours after his/her commitment.

### **PROGRAMME ON MONDAY EVENINGS**

At 18h30 the workers get together for prayer and planning.  
Not later than 19h00 they depart for visitations.  
Most of these visitations should be arranged by making appointments with these persons during the day. The church office is responsible for these arrangements. The worker(s) can arrange additional visitations.  
It is always advisable to send an experienced worker with a new one.  
(Mark 6:7)  
The names and addresses of the persons to be visited will be given to you on a memo.

#### **The following information will be found on the memo:**

- When a person has made a commitment to Christ
- His/her age
- Who the person was who led him/her to Christ
- Their specific need, etc.

#### **Study this memo beforehand and use this information at the home you will visit.**

Because of the fact that many people become nervous when seeing you at their doorstep with a Bible in the hand, do not take one with you. Should you need a Bible you can ask the person(s) you are visiting to help you with that. It is also wise to select carefully and first read the literature that you plan to leave in the home you are visiting. Poor printing and mistruths in literature will do much harm to well-meaning souls.

#### **What does one do when arriving at a home?**

After knocking at the door or pressing the doorbell, inquire about the person you have come to visit. Then friendly introduce yourself and converse the purpose of your visit.  
If you intend to only follow-up one person or child of the family, then it is important to communicate this immediately but friendly in order that the rest of

the family will be conscious of this fact. One should never embarrass a person by talking about his/her spiritual condition in front of others.

Set people at ease by first having a “preamble” by discussing common events or topics. One should, however, stay conscious of one’s real aim and switch over to the spiritual as soon as the time is ready.

Do not just accept that the worker before you have completed their work effectively. Always find out from the person what their spiritual experience was and, in this way, determine at what spiritual level they are. From this point one can proceed to go ahead.

Be surrendered to the Holy Spirit to guide you very clearly onward.

Do not linger at a house for too long – stay for as long as they are interested.

It doesn’t benefit to speak to people when they are tired.

Avoid arguments! **2 Tim. 2:23** “But avoid foolish and ignorant disputes, knowing that they generate strife.”

Rather lose an argument and win a friend. An argument can also get you off course and so you will miss your aim completely.

Pray with the family before leaving. If someone in the home is sick, it is of course a wonderful opportunity to pray for the sick person, and therefore also for the whole family. Always pray with great wisdom, and if another worker is visiting with you, he/she should never agree in prayer too loudly – please be wise in this. When the situation is not positive to pray, do not force down a prayer on them. Should you promise to remember them in your prayers when at home, you must keep your promise.

Very urgent cases must be handed to the Pastor telephonically that very same evening. Feel free to ask counsel from the Pastor when needed.

Evaluate your own work – it will enable you to concentrate on weak points with your next visit. If you find that your knowledge on a basic spiritual subject is not good enough, it is important for you to read about this or ask someone’s counsel.

It is your responsibility to keep on praying for the persons you visited.

## **PREACHING**

Paul wrote to Timothy as a young preacher the following words in **2 Tim.4:1,2** *“I charge you therefore before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, who will judge the living and the dead at His appearing and His kingdom: **Preach the word! Be ready in season and out of season** The Living Bible says: “whenever you get the chance, in season and out, when it is convenient and when it is not. Convince, rebuke, exhort, with all longsuffering and teaching.”*

In **2 Tim.2:15** Paul says: *“Study to show yourself approved to God, a worker who does not need to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth”*

*(This means there is a RIGHT way and a WRONG way in preaching the Word of the Lord!)*

In **2 Tim.3:16,17** *“All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness.”*

### **HOW DO YOU PREPARE YOUR SERMON?**

1. First get a Word from the Lord.

The question is: How do I get a Word from the Lord?

The best answer is: Read your Bible enough and you will get more sermons than you can use. Do not run to books to find a sermon.

Use books after God has given you a message only to fill in on your own notes.

Please do not read the Bible for a sermon. But by reading your Bible sermons will come to you.

You will experience the same as Ezekiel.

**Ezek. 1:3 “the word of the Lord came expressly to Ezekiel”**

**Ezek. 3:16 “the word of the Lord came to me, saying...”**

**Ezek. 6:1 “Now the word of the Lord came to me, saying...”**

2. Write down all thoughts concerning your message. Even if they are not in sequence. Make notes even in the night when God gives them to you. Stand up out of your bed and write these notes down. If you do not do this the devil will steal them from you.
3. Do good research on the Scriptures you will use in your sermon. Ask questions when you read the Scriptures. God will give you answers.
4. Also read them in other translations of the Bible
5. Always ask: “What is the occasion and who is the audience?”

6. What is your theme? And stick to it!
7. What is the goal in your preaching? Never preach without a goal!
8. Before you preach: Take time to meditate on your message and each scripture. Pray over your sermon. Pray over each point.
9. Let your sermon first preach to your own heart before you give it to others.  
WHEN PREACHERS LIVE HOW THEY PREACH AND PREACH HOW THEY LIVE, THEY WILL ALWAYS BE ANOINTED AND EFFECTIVE IN THEIR PREACHING!
10. Your message must have an **introduction** and a good **climax**.
11. Your sermon must have three to five points. Anything more you must put into a second sermon.

A GOOD PREACHER WILL ALWAYS TAKE NOTES OF ANOTHER PREACHER AND LEARN FROM THEIR PREACHING

### ***Nine Fundamental Truths of Preaching***

- (1) Sermon preparation and how to deliver it is something we grow in.
- (2) Any skill is built by DESIRE, CONSISTENCY and HARD WORK
- (3) Work on wrong habits.
- (4) Be clear on what you say if you want others to understand you.
- (5) You cannot know what you are going to say if you do not put it in words.
- (6) Let your preaching always be Biblical. (Preach from the Word)
- (7) Never use preaching to get rid of your frustration.
- (8) Give good information in your sermon mixed with revelation.
- (9) Be sure that you can say "Thus says the Lord"

### PREACHERS STYLE:

"Style" is not something new. Everyone has their own style. It is there every time when you open your mouth to preach.

Ask yourself the following:

- (1) Is my style full of vitality and interesting?
- (2) Is my style boring?
- (3) Is my preaching clear and loud enough or too soft?
- (4) Am I nervous or calm?
- (5) Am I flexible or rigid?

God uses our style as we are. Do not try to be someone else. The Lord may say to you that He has someone like that already and doesn't need another one like that.

God used Paul as he was with his long sentences and Mark with his wrong grammar. The whole book of Mark is full of "And" "And when."

Use notes when you preach your sermon. But never be a slave of your notes. Good preaching takes place while you are busy delivering your message. When you open your mouth, God will fill it.

Practise to use words in your preaching that will describe certain thoughts better. But never try and use words that normal people do not understand. Or at least explain what you are saying when you use such words.

Effective preaching is when you preach plain as Jesus did so that everybody can understand what you want to say.  
Do not shout when you preach and learn to use your breath in such a way that you will not “swallow” some of your words.  
And please do not “chase rabbits”  
“Chasing rabbits” is when you every now and then run in a direction and not keep to your subject.

Your “BODY LANGUAGE” is very important. You will not show your fist to your wife when you tell her that you love her.  
Be neat on yourself (and that includes your shoes) when you stand up to preach.  
Do not preach with your hands in your pockets.  
Do not play with your tie while you are preaching.

**EYE CONTACT!** Do not keep looking into the sky or somewhere in the back of the building when you are preaching. Learn to make eye contact with the people while you are preaching. Find people in the congregation that have open hearts towards the Word of the Lord and preach to them. Do not take notice of those that you cannot get so far to listen to you.

Be relevant in your preaching. **Preach to the needs of the people.**

**What to do with your sermon notes:**

Keep record where you preached each sermon (Write it at the back of your notes)

Keep a filing system for all your sermon notes.

Use some of them to write your books.

**Note:** *I want to encourage every preacher to write books. Start by using your sermon notes and write as if you were talking to a person.*

## **WAYS TO STUDY ANY PORTION IN THE BIBLE**

### ***Study the background (even if you must use a Dictionary.***

- Learn something about the author.
- For whom was this originally written for?
- Where did this take place?
- Why was this written to them?
- What is the important theme?

### **Preach in a way that the listeners can understand.**

### **We need Information but also Revelation to be good preachers.**

#### ***Reference and Research Material***

You need the following:

- (1) A few translations of the Bible
- (2) A Bible Atlas
- (3) A Bible Dictionary (You can also use "Google")
- (4) Concordance
- (5) A good explanatory Dictionary

We know it is through the "foolishness of preaching" that God has chosen to impregnate the world with His Word.

Paul said in *1 Cor.9:16* "Woe is unto me if I preach not the Gospel."

#### **When using an interpreter**

- (1) When you use an interpreter use complete statements. Finish one thought at a time so that your interpreter can interpret correctly.  
Some languages will start with the verb first.
- (2) Make sure that the expressions you use are understood. You may talk of a "robot" and they of a "traffic light"
- (3) Make sure that the text you use are in the same place in the Bibles to the people you are preaching.  
The Russian Bible does not have 1 Samuel and 2 Samuel.  
They have 1<sup>st</sup> Kings; 2<sup>nd</sup> Kings; 3<sup>rd</sup> Kings and 4<sup>th</sup> Kings  
From Psalm 11 the Psalms in the Russian Bible is one less than in our Bible.

#### **SEVEN SOURCES OF THE DOWNFALL OF A PREACHER**

- (1) Poor textual study
- (2) Negative mentality
- (3) Physical tiredness
- (4) Deadline pressure
- (5) Spiritual dryness
- (6) Laziness
- (7) Poor planning

### ***Paint Pictures and tell Stories***

H.W. Beecher once said: *“He, who would hold the ear of the people, must tell stories or paint pictures”*

We see children come running of the church with their artwork and telling their parents the story the teacher told them with excitement.

### **Why do we not see this enthusiasm with the adults?**

Jesus told many stories that were life changing to the people.

Ask the Lord to give you your own stories (even from your life) that you can add to the preaching of the Word. These “stories” will “paint the pictures” Figurative language will help you paint the pictures.

### **THE TECHNICAL SIDE OF PREACHING**

- It's not just what we say that's important but also what we don't say.
- We must communicate with a heart of love.
- Children perceive differently than adults.
- As a minister, we have a great responsibility and that is getting God's message to people.
- We must have the right beliefs, because the Bible says: *“For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.”*  
(Matthew 12:34)
- *“For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the Law of the Lord, and to do it, and to teach statutes and ordinances in Israel.”*  
(Ezra 7:10)  
Ezra first prepared his heart, otherwise the message would have meant nothing.
- Christian Character  
Oswald Chambers said: "My worth to God in public is what I am in private."  
D. L. Moody said: "Character is what you are in the dark."

*Success is a desire to please God more than wanting the praises of man.*

### **Teaching with Style**

Everyone has a style. Please be enthusiastic and unique. Use your own experience in your preaching.

**Whatever you do, always depend on the Holy Spirit**

## **Sermon Classifications**

### **Topical**

A topical sermon takes only a topic or subject from the text and then expand on that topic.

### **Analytical**

You explain text-by-text of a certain story in the Bible.

### **Advantages**

- It is more scriptural in design than topical sermons.
- It permits great variety in construction and selection.
- In most cases it will be remembered longer than a topical sermon because the hearer can follow along in his Bible
- A single passage will meet the needs of the people.
- It helps a lot when you are preaching about moral issues because a text carries more authority when preaching a specific truth.
- It also helps when preaching a specific doctrinal truth.

### ***Climax of any Sermon***

- The climax is the final, most important point of the sermon.
- A sermon can have progress without a goal or climax being reached.
- A good sermon must be like an arrow, not shot into the air but to a target.
- Climax is achieved in the construction and the delivery of the sermon.

### **Preparation for a Sermon**

When choosing a text, make sure that it is in context.

Give a clear theme.

Don't let it be too long (if your sermon is not a blessing let the length be a blessing!)

### **Conclusion**

Don't introduce a new idea in the conclusion.

Your sermon should give answers for the needs of people.

***I challenge you: “Be a good and strong Preacher!”***



## RECOMMENDED TEXTBOOKS

### COURSE ONE: Discover Yourself

*“Understanding your Potential” by: Myles Munroe*

Destiny Image Publishers, Inc. P.O. Box 351, Shippensburg, PA 17257-0351  
Bahamas Faith Ministry, P.O. Box N9583, Nassan, Bahamas, 2002

Understanding our Potential will help us to fulfil our purpose in life. The importance of understanding our potential is shown in the following question asked to Pastor Sunday Adelaya, the senior pastor of The Embassy of God church in Kiev. This church has grown since 1994 from 7 members to 25,000.

The question the author asked Sunday Adelaya on the 20<sup>th</sup> April 2010 was: *“Is there something special that God used to let your Church grow?”*

His answer was: *“God used the teaching of Potential by Dr. Myles Munroe.”*

*“Spirit controlled Temperament” by: Tim La Haye*

Kingsway Publications Ltd., P.O. Box 827, BN21 3YJ, England, 1999

We must discover our Personalities to understand each other more. This will help a Church to grow in unity.

In our congregations we find that God has put people together with different temperaments. Understanding each other better will help the church to grow.

There is nothing more fascinating about man than his temperament.

It is temperament that provides each human being with the distinguishing qualities of uniqueness that makes him as individually different from his fellow men as the different designs God has given to snowflakes.

It is the unseen force underlying human action, a force that can destroy a normal and productive human being, unless it is disciplined and directed.

*Temperament provides man with both strengths and weaknesses. Although we like to think only of our strengths, everyone has weaknesses.*

We have all inherited a basic temperament from our parents that contains both strengths and weaknesses.

This temperament is called several things in the Bible:

*“the natural man” “the flesh” “the old man”.*

Temperament is the combination of inborn qualities that affects man’s behaviour. These qualities are passed on by the genes on the basis of nationality, race and sex. *Temperament is the combination of qualities with which we were born.*

In this book we are taught about the four different kinds of temperaments, namely: **“Sanguine”**, **“Choleric”**, **“Melancholic”** and **“Phlegmatic”**.

## COURSE TWO: Basic Truth

*“Christ the Healer” by: F.F. Bosworth*

Whitaker House, 30 Hunt Valley Circle, New Kensington, PA 15068, 2000

This is one of the best books concerning “Miracles and Healing”  
Miracles and healing filled the first Churches with people, and will do the same today.

In this book Bosworth debates that healing was included in Jesus’ Atonement.

He gives good reasons why he believes that healing is meant for all people. He discusses Christ’s Ministry of healing and gives his philosophy why this healing ministry should continue.

He gives answers concerning “the thorn in the flesh” of the Apostle Paul. Then Bosworth gives thirty-one questions to consider, relating to healing. He ends his book with “Testimonies of Healing”.

*“Take another look at Guidance” by: Bob Mumford*

Life Changers Publishing, P.O. Box 98088, Raleigh, NC 27624, 1999

The usefulness of this book: To be led by God’s Spirit in what He wants us to do to His glory

Mumford gives sound teaching on how God guides His people.

He uses harbour lights that one finds at certain river or lagoon mouths when ships have to enter at night time or in heavy mist.

God has given us “*three lights in a row*” to help us when we need guidance.

These lights are: (1) The Word of God  
(2) The Holy Spirit (inner witness)  
(3) Circumstances

*“Destined to Reign” by: Joseph Prince*

Harrison House Publishers, P.O. Box 35035, Tulsa, Oklahoma, 74153

In order to establish a foundation of real Biblical preaching (more specific the message of “Grace”) the following resource will be discussed and explained:

Prince has a large Church in Singapore, counting thousand. His message is all about God’s grace. God’s gift to us is “no Condemnation”.

If we condemn people from our pulpits, we will not be able to help them receive God’s “Good News”, the Gospel.

In his book he tells the reader that the blood of Jesus protects us from condemnation. We should never feel guilty when we are sick. Weapons will be formed against us, but it will not prosper against us (Isaiah 54:17).

The Church says: “Go and sin no more, and only then will we not condemn you.” But Jesus says: “I do not condemn you, therefore go and sin no more.” (This is what He did for the woman in John 8.)

If you are under condemnation, you are doomed to repeat your sin, but if you are under grace, sin will not have dominion over you.

The priest in the Old Covenant did not examine the sinner, but searched the lamb that was brought as an offering! The Lamb of God became our sin offering. He was searched and found without blemish.

**A message of this grace of God will fill the Church, not a message of condemnation!**

### **COURSE THREE: Praise and Worship**

*“Exploring Worship” by: Bob Sorge*  
Oasis House, Lee’s Summit, Missouri, 1987

Sorge explains that “Praise and Worship” is the very heart of a Church. Churches grow when praise and worship touch their hearts or Churches split up if this does not touch their hearts.

Praise is not praise until it is vocalized or shown forth. There are both vocal and non-vocal forms of praise, but whatever the form, praise is demonstrated - others are aware that praise is taking place!

We should praise the Lord because we are commanded in His word to do so. Psalm 150 is very clear on this.

This book will teach you **when**, **where** and **how** we should praise the Lord.

This book will also teach you everything about Worship:

- What Worship is
- The differences between Praise and Worship
- How to become a Worshipper
- Planning the Worship Service

### **COURSE THREE: Prayer and Intercession**

*“Intercessory Prayer” by: Ditch Sheets*  
Regal Books, Ventura, California, U.S.A., 1996

The Power of Prayer is to show how important prayer is for a Church to grow, the following will be discussed:

The purpose of this book is to ignite and empower the prayer lives of those who read it. The answer to why prayer is necessary lies in God’s original plan when He created Adam. God needs men and women to stand between Him and people in need, to stand “in the gap” (Ezek.22:30,31) as Moses, Elijah and Daniel did for God’s people. To “intercede” means to “stand in between”

*“Prayer that moves mountains” by: Gordon Lindsay*

Christ for the Nations Inc., P.O. Box 769000, Dallas, TX 75376-9000, 2000  
Jesus said: “Assuredly, I say to you, if you have faith and do not doubt, you will not only do what was done to the fig tree, but also if you say to this mountain, ‘Be removed and be cast into the sea, it will be done. And all things, whatever you ask in prayer, believing, you will receive.” (Matt. 21:21, 22) Gordon Lindsay teaches that we must learn the secret to release this power of prayer God has given us. Then miracles will happen.

## **COURSE THREE: The Holy Spirit**

*“The Gift of Prophecy” by: Jack Deere Servant Publications,  
P.O. Box 8617, Ann Arbor, Michigan. 48107. U.S.A.*

## **COURSE THREE: The Kingdom of God**

*“The King and you” by: Bob Mumford*

Flemming, H., Revell Co., Old Tappan, New Jersey, 1974

To understand the importance of the message of the Kingdom of God.

The New Testament is all about “The Kingdom”.

Matthew 4:23 sums it all up: *“And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all kinds of sickness and all kinds of disease among the people.”*

We will find wherever “the gospel of the kingdom” is preached, that people will be healed and delivered.

The gospel of the Kingdom is summed up by Jesus in Matt.5,6,7

We all know this part of the Bible as The Beatitudes, or in other words, *“Attitudes to be”*. The Principles of God’s Kingdom is put together in this wonderful teaching of Christ.

Mumford teaches in this book on all the “Bylaws of the Kingdom”.

Altogether he explains 15 of these bylaws.

## **COURSE FIVE: How can a Church Grow?**

*“Guidelines to Church Growth” by: Dan Nell*

*P.O. Box 1282, Jeffrey’s Bay. 6330. South Africa*

*Email: [dnell@inetcom.co.za](mailto:dnell@inetcom.co.za) Website: [www.equipministry.co.za](http://www.equipministry.co.za)*

This book will teach you that *“It is God that brings growth”*

You will find a complete study on how the first Church grew according to the book of Acts. Then there will be chapters on the following:

Ministries and Church growth The Kingdom of God and Church growth

Preaching and Church growth Our Children and Church growth

Church Planting and Church growth

*“Natural Church Development” by: Christian Schwarz*

*Published by: CHURCHWISE, Randhart, 1457, South Africa*

This book will explain: The eight principles for Church Growth

After Schwartz did a survey with one thousand Churches he gives eight principles for Church Growth:

The first one is: “Empowering Leadership”

The second one is: “Gift-orientated ministry”

The third one is: “Passionate spirituality”

The fourth one is: “Functional structures”

The fifth one is: “Inspiring worship services”

The sixth one is: “Holistic small groups”

The seventh one is: “Need-orientated Evangelism”

The eighth one is: “Loving relationship”

## COURSE FIVE: Spiritual Leadership

*“Developing the Leader within you” by: John Maxwell*  
Thomas Nelson Inc, Tennessee, USA, 1993

You will find the importance of equipping leaders for a Church to grow. This is one of the best books that should give answers on Leadership. John Maxwell makes the following clear statement about Leadership by saying:

Everything rises and falls on Leadership.

We find different kinds of Leaders, such as:

<b>The Leading Leader</b>	Is born with leadership qualities
<b>The Learned Leader</b>	Has been with leaders most of his life
<b>The Latent Leader</b>	Has recently seen leadership and is in training
<b>The Limited Leader</b>	Has little exposure to leadership or training

There is only one definition for Leadership, and that is: *“Leadership is the ability to influence others to become followers.”*

A real leader knows the difference between being the **boss** and a **leader**, as illustrated by the following:

The boss drives his workers; the leader coaches them.

The boss depends upon authority; the leader on goodwill.

The boss inspires fear; the leader inspires enthusiasm.

The boss fixes the blame for the breakdown; the leader fixes the breakdown.

The boss knows how it is done; the leader shows how.

The boss says “go”; the leader says “let’s go”.

## COURSE FIVE: Soul Winning and Church Planting

*“Just walk across the Room” by: Bill Hybels*  
Zondervan Publishers, Grand Rapids, Michigan. 49530

This is a practical book helping us to understand “Friendship Evangelism”